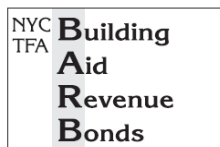


**NEW ISSUE**

In the opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Bond Counsel to the Authority, interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds will be exempt from personal income taxes imposed by the State of New York (the “State”) or any political subdivision thereof, including The City of New York (the “City”). In the further opinion of Bond Counsel, assuming continuing compliance with the provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, as described herein, interest on the Series 2018 S-3 Bonds and the Subseries S-4A Bonds will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes. Interest on the Subseries S-4B Bonds will be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes. See “SECTION VI: TAX MATTERS” herein for further information.



**\$1,075,710,000**  
**New York City Transitional Finance Authority**  
**Building Aid Revenue Bonds**  
**\$500,000,000 Fiscal 2018 Series S-3**  
**Tax-Exempt Bonds**  
**\$575,710,000 Fiscal 2018 Series S-4**  

<b>\$502,455,000</b>	<b>\$73,255,000</b>
<b>Subseries S-4A</b>	<b>Subseries S-4B</b>
<b>Tax-Exempt Bonds</b>	<b>Taxable Bonds</b>

Dated: Date of Delivery

Due: July 15, as shown on inside cover pages

The Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “New Money Bonds”), the Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Subseries S-4A Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “Subseries S-4A Bonds” and, together with the New Money Bonds, the “Tax-Exempt Bonds”) and the Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Subseries S-4B Taxable Bonds, (the “Subseries S-4B Bonds” or the “Taxable Bonds” and, together with the Subseries 2018 S-4A Bonds, the “Refunding Bonds”; the Refunding Bonds, together with the New Money Bonds, the “Series 2018 S Bonds”) are being issued by the New York City Transitional Finance Authority (the “Authority”) pursuant to Part A-3 of Chapter 58 of the Laws of New York, 2006 (the “School Financing Act”) and the New York City Transitional Finance Authority Act, as amended (the “Enabling Act” and, together with the School Financing Act, the “Act”), and the Amended and Restated Original Indenture, as restated December 1, 2010, as supplemented (the “Indenture”), by and between the Authority and The Bank of New York Mellon, New York, New York, as trustee (the “Trustee”).

Pursuant to the School Financing Act, the Building Aid Revenue Bonds are payable from the State Building Aid (as defined herein) payable by the State to the City and assigned to the Authority. The payment of State Building Aid and any other State education aid to the City or the Authority is subject to annual appropriation by the State, is subject and subordinate to certain prior statutory and State constitutional claims and is dependent in part upon the financial condition of the State. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Financial Condition of the State.” In addition, the application of State Building Aid to the payment of the Building Aid Revenue Bonds is subordinate to the payment of (i) Future Tax Secured Bonds of the Authority issued prior to November 16, 2006 and (ii) certain operating expenses of the Authority.

Pursuant to Section 99-b of the State Finance Law, the State Comptroller shall deduct and withhold State education aid or assistance due to the City in an amount required to pay the principal of and interest on any Building Aid Revenue Bonds in default.

The Series 2018 S Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds, registered in the name of Cede & Co. as nominee for The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”). Purchasers will not receive physical delivery of the Series 2018 S Bonds. Principal, redemption price and interest will be payable to DTC by the Trustee. Disbursement of such payments to DTC Participants is the responsibility of DTC, and disbursements to the purchasers of the Series 2018 S Bonds are the responsibility of the DTC Participants.

Purchases of the Series 2018 S Bonds will be made in book-entry form in denominations of \$5,000 or integral multiples thereof. Interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds accrues from their dated date, and is payable on each January 15 and July 15, commencing July 15, 2018.

The Series 2018 S Bonds are subject to redemption or mandatory tender prior to maturity as described herein.

**THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS ARE NOT A DEBT OF EITHER THE STATE OR THE CITY, AND NEITHER THE STATE NOR THE CITY SHALL BE LIABLE THEREON. PAYMENT OF STATE BUILDING AID AND ANY OTHER STATE EDUCATION AID TO THE CITY OR THE AUTHORITY IS SUBJECT TO ANNUAL APPROPRIATION BY THE STATE. THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS DO NOT CONSTITUTE “STATE SUPPORTED DEBT” (COMMONLY KNOWN AS “STATE APPROPRIATION DEBT”) WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE STATE FINANCE LAW. THEREFORE, THE STATE WILL NOT BE ENTERING INTO ANY FINANCING AGREEMENT OR SERVICE CONTRACT IN CONNECTION WITH THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS.**

The Tax-Exempt Bonds are being offered to the public, subject to prior sale, when, as and if issued by the Authority and accepted by the Underwriters. The Taxable Bonds are being sold by public letting on the basis of electronic competitive bids in accordance with a Notice of Sale dated March 6, 2018, as supplemented. The issuance of the Series 2018 S Bonds is subject to the approval of legality of the Series 2018 S Bonds and certain other matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, New York, New York, Bond Counsel to the Authority. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Authority and the City by the New York City Corporation Counsel. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters of the Tax-Exempt Bonds and the Initial Purchasers of the Taxable Bonds by their counsel, Katten Muchin Rosenman LLP, New York, New York. It is expected that the Series 2018 S Bonds will be available for delivery to DTC in New York, New York, on or about March 22, 2018.

**Jefferies**

**BofA Merrill Lynch**

**Ramirez & Co., Inc.**

**Barclays**  
**Drexel Hamilton, LLC**  
**J.P. Morgan**  
**Morgan Stanley**  
**RBC Capital Markets**  
**Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated**

**BNY Mellon Capital Markets, LLC**  
**Fidelity Capital Markets**  
**Janney Montgomery Scott**  
**Oppenheimer & Co.**  
**Roosevelt & Cross Incorporated**  
**TD Securities**  
**Wells Fargo Securities**

**Citigroup**  
**Goldman Sachs & Co. LLC**  
**Loop Capital Markets**  
**Raymond James**  
**Siebert Cisneros Shank & Co., L.L.C.**  
**U.S. Bancorp Investments, Inc.**

**Academy Securities Inc.**  
**Hilltop Securities Inc.**  
**Stern Brothers & Co.**

**Blaylock Van, LLC**  
**PNC Capital Markets LLC**

**FTN Financial Capital Markets**  
**Rice Financial Products Company**  
**The Williams Capital Group, L.P.**

**\$500,000,000**  
**Building Aid Revenue Bonds**  
**Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax Exempt Bonds**

<u>Due July 15,</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Yield</u>	<u>CUSIP Number<sup>(1)</sup></u> <u>Base CUSIP 64972H</u>
2019	\$6,930,000	4%	1.49%	H54
2020	7,210,000	5	1.61	H62
2021	7,570,000	5	1.78	H70
2022	1,865,000	3	1.97	K92
2022 <sup>(2)</sup>	7,600,000	5	1.84	L42
2023	1,045,000	4	2.14	L26
2023	950,000	5	2.14	L91
2023 <sup>(2)</sup>	7,910,000	5	1.92	L59
2024	2,070,000	4	2.25	L34
2024 <sup>(2)</sup>	8,320,000	5	1.94	L67
2025	2,105,000	5	2.40	M25
2025 <sup>(2)</sup>	8,780,000	5	2.00	L75
2026	2,805,000	5	2.54	M33
2026 <sup>(2)</sup>	8,625,000	5	2.10	L83
2027 <sup>(2)</sup>	12,005,000	5	2.19	H88
2028 <sup>(2)</sup>	12,605,000	5	2.23	H96
2029 <sup>(2)</sup>	13,235,000	5	2.27	J29
2030 <sup>(2)</sup>	13,895,000	5	2.30	J37
2031 <sup>(3)</sup>	14,590,000	5	2.98	J45
2032 <sup>(3)</sup>	15,320,000	5	3.02	J52
2033 <sup>(3)</sup>	16,085,000	5	3.08	J60
2034 <sup>(3)</sup>	16,890,000	5	3.13	J78
2035 <sup>(3)</sup>	17,735,000	5¼	3.10	J86
2036 <sup>(3)</sup>	18,665,000	5¼	3.12	J94
2037 <sup>(3)</sup>	19,645,000	5	3.23	K27
2038 <sup>(3)</sup>	20,625,000	5	3.25	K35
2039 <sup>(3)</sup>	21,660,000	4	3.61	K43
2046 <sup>(3)</sup>	30,330,000	4	3.72	K76
2047	29,680,000	3⅞	3.75	K84

\$97,085,000 5% Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Term Bonds due July 15, 2043<sup>(3)</sup>—Yield 3.32% CUSIP Number<sup>(1)</sup> 64972HK50  
\$56,165,000 5¼% Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Term Bonds due July 15, 2045<sup>(3)</sup>—Yield 3.24% CUSIP Number<sup>(1)</sup> 64972HK68

- 
- (1) Copyright, American Bankers Association (“ABA”). CUSIP data herein are provided by CUSIP Global Services, which is managed on behalf of the ABA by S&P Global Market Intelligence, a division of S&P Global Inc. The CUSIP numbers listed above are being provided solely for the convenience of Bondholders only at the time of issuance of the Series 2018 S Bonds and none of the Authority, the Underwriters or the Initial Purchasers makes any representation with respect to such numbers or undertakes any responsibility for their accuracy now or at any time in the future. The CUSIP number for a specific maturity is subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2018 S Bonds as a result of various subsequent actions including, but not limited to, a refunding in whole or in part of such maturity or as a result of the procurement of secondary market portfolio insurance or other similar enhancement by investors that is applicable to all or a portion of certain maturities of the Series 2018 S Bonds.
- (2) Priced to the first optional call date on July 15, 2021.
- (3) Priced to the first optional call date on July 15, 2028.

**\$575,710,000**  
**Building Aid Revenue Bonds**  
**Fiscal 2018 Series S-4**

**\$502,455,000**  
**Subseries S-4A Tax-Exempt Bonds**

<u>Due July 15,</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Yield</u>	<u>CUSIP Number<sup>(1)</sup></u> <u>Base CUSIP 64972H</u>
2018	\$4,000,000	3%	1.25%	H39
2022	4,830,000	3	1.97	E81
2022	12,810,000	5	1.97	H47
2023	22,090,000	5	2.14	E99
2024	23,220,000	5	2.25	F23
2025	24,415,000	5	2.40	F31
2026	25,665,000	5	2.54	F49
2027	26,985,000	5	2.67	F56
2028	28,365,000	5	2.76	F64
2029 <sup>(2)</sup>	29,820,000	5	2.85	F72
2030 <sup>(2)</sup>	31,355,000	5	2.93	F80
2031 <sup>(2)</sup>	32,955,000	5	2.98	F98
2032 <sup>(2)</sup>	34,650,000	5	3.02	G22
2033	9,175,000	3¼	3.35	G30
2033 <sup>(2)</sup>	27,170,000	5	3.08	G48
2034 <sup>(2)</sup>	38,125,000	5	3.13	G55
2035 <sup>(2)</sup>	40,135,000	5¼	3.10	G63
2036 <sup>(2)</sup>	4,400,000	5	3.20	G89
2036 <sup>(2)</sup>	37,865,000	5¼	3.12	G71
2037 <sup>(2)</sup>	15,000,000	4	3.58	H21
2037 <sup>(2)</sup>	29,425,000	5	3.23	G97

**\$73,255,000**  
**Subseries S-4B Taxable Bonds**

<u>Due July 15,</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Price</u>	<u>CUSIP Number<sup>(1)</sup></u> <u>Base CUSIP 64972H</u>
2018	\$13,865,000	2%	100%	E32
2019	18,215,000	2¼	100	E40
2020	18,625,000	2.45	100	E57
2021	19,090,000	2.62	100	E65
2022	3,460,000	2.73	100	E73

- (1) Copyright, American Bankers Association (“ABA”). CUSIP data herein are provided by CUSIP Global Services, which is managed on behalf of the ABA by S&P Global Market Intelligence, a division of S&P Global Inc. The CUSIP numbers listed above are being provided solely for the convenience of Bondholders only at the time of issuance of the Series 2018 S Bonds and none of the Authority, the Underwriters or the Initial Purchasers makes any representation with respect to such numbers or undertakes any responsibility for their accuracy now or at any time in the future. The CUSIP number for a specific maturity is subject to being changed after the issuance of the Series 2018 S Bonds as a result of various subsequent actions including, but not limited to, a refunding in whole or in part of such maturity or as a result of the procurement of secondary market portfolio insurance or other similar enhancement by investors that is applicable to all or a portion of certain maturities of the Series 2018 S Bonds.
- (2) Priced to the first optional call date on July 15, 2028.

(This page intentionally left blank)

**THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS ARE BEING ISSUED AS MULTI-MODAL BONDS IN THE FIXED RATE MODE. THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT DOES NOT DESCRIBE TERMS SPECIFICALLY APPLICABLE TO SUCH SERIES 2018 S BONDS BEARING INTEREST AT RATES OTHER THAN A FIXED RATE. SEE “SECTION III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS—OPTIONAL REDEMPTION OR MANDATORY TENDER.”**

Certain information in this Official Statement has been provided by the City and other sources considered by the Authority to be reliable. All estimates and assumptions contained herein are believed to be reliable, but no representation is made that such estimates or assumptions are correct or will be realized. No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized by the Authority, the Underwriters or the Initial Purchasers to give any information or to make any representation with respect to the Series 2018 S Bonds, other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representation must not be relied upon as having been authorized by any of the foregoing. The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the parties referred to above since the date hereof. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of the Series 2018 S Bonds, by any person, in any jurisdiction in which it is unlawful for such person to make such offer, solicitation or sale. The Underwriters and the Initial Purchasers have reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with their responsibilities to investors under the securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but neither the Underwriters nor the Initial Purchasers guaranty the accuracy or completeness of such information.

This Official Statement includes forecasts, projections and estimates that are based on expectations and assumptions which existed at the time such forecasts, projections and estimates were prepared. In light of the important factors that may materially affect economic conditions in the City and the State and the amount of State Building Aid and Tax Revenues (as defined herein), the inclusion in this Official Statement of such forecasts, projections and estimates should not be regarded as a representation by any of the Authority, the Underwriters or the Initial Purchasers that such forecasts, projections and estimates will occur. Such forecasts, projections and estimates are not intended as representations of fact or guarantees of results.

If and when included in this Official Statement, the words “expects,” “forecasts,” “projects,” “intends,” “anticipates,” “estimates” and analogous expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements and any such statements inherently are subject to a variety of risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those projected. Such risks and uncertainties include, among others, general economic and business conditions, changes in political, social and economic conditions, regulatory initiatives and compliance with governmental regulations, litigation and various other events, conditions and circumstances, many of which are beyond the control of the Authority. These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this Official Statement. The Authority disclaims any obligation or undertaking to release publicly any updates or revisions to any forward-looking statement contained herein to reflect any change in the Authority’s expectations with regard thereto or any change in events, conditions or circumstances on which any such statement is based.

**ALTHOUGH CERTAIN INFORMATION RELATING TO THE FINANCIAL CONDITION OF THE STATE IS INCLUDED BY SPECIFIC REFERENCE IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT, THE STATE HAS NOT REVIEWED OR APPROVED THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT, NOR IS IT PASSING UPON THE ACCURACY OR ADEQUACY OF THE INFORMATION SET FORTH IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT.**

**IN CONNECTION WITH OFFERINGS AND SALES OF THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS, NO ACTION HAS BEEN TAKEN BY THE AUTHORITY THAT WOULD PERMIT A PUBLIC OFFERING OF THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS, OR POSSESSION OR DISTRIBUTION OF ANY INFORMATION RELATING TO THE PRICING OF THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS, THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT OR ANY OTHER OFFERING OR PUBLICITY MATERIAL RELATING TO THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS, IN ANY NON-U.S. JURISDICTION WHERE ACTION FOR THAT PURPOSE IS REQUIRED. ACCORDINGLY, THE UNDERWRITERS AND THE INITIAL PURCHASERS ARE OBLIGATED TO COMPLY WITH ALL APPLICABLE LAWS AND REGULATIONS IN FORCE IN ANY NON-U.S.**

**JURISDICTION IN WHICH THEY PURCHASE, OFFER OR SELL THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS OR POSSESS OR DISTRIBUTE THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT OR ANY OTHER OFFERING OR PUBLICITY MATERIAL RELATING TO THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS AND ARE OBLIGATED TO OBTAIN ANY CONSENT, APPROVAL OR PERMISSION REQUIRED BY THEM FOR THE PURCHASE, OFFER OR SALE BY THEM OF THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS UNDER THE LAWS AND REGULATIONS IN FORCE IN ANY NON-U.S. JURISDICTION TO WHICH THEY ARE SUBJECT OR IN WHICH THEY MAKE SUCH PURCHASES, OFFERINGS OR SALES AND THE AUTHORITY SHALL HAVE NO RESPONSIBILITY THEREFOR.**

**THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS HAVE NOT BEEN RECOMMENDED BY ANY FEDERAL OR STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION OR REGULATORY BODY. FURTHERMORE, THE FOREGOING AUTHORITIES HAVE NOT CONFIRMED THE ACCURACY OR DETERMINED THE ADEQUACY OF THIS DOCUMENT. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.**

**MARKS PANETH LLP, THE AUTHORITY'S INDEPENDENT AUDITOR, HAS NOT REVIEWED, COMMENTED ON OR APPROVED, AND IS NOT ASSOCIATED WITH, THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT. THE REPORT OF MARKS PANETH LLP RELATING TO THE AUTHORITY'S FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE FISCAL YEARS ENDED JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016, WHICH IS A MATTER OF PUBLIC RECORD, IS INCLUDED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT. HOWEVER, MARKS PANETH LLP HAS NOT PERFORMED ANY PROCEDURES ON ANY FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OR OTHER FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE AUTHORITY, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY OF THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT, SINCE THE DATE OF SUCH REPORT AND HAS NOT BEEN ASKED TO CONSENT TO THE INCLUSION OF ITS REPORT IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT.**

**IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE UNDERWRITERS, WITH RESPECT TO THE TAX-EXEMPT BONDS, AND THE INITIAL PURCHASERS, WITH RESPECT TO THE TAXABLE BONDS, MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE OR MAINTAIN THE MARKET PRICE OF THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.**

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
SUMMARY OF TERMS .....	1
SECTION I: INTRODUCTION.....	9
SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS.....	10
General .....	10
Assignment of State Building Aid.....	11
Memorandum of Understanding.....	11
State Building Aid .....	13
Additional Building Aid Revenue Bonds .....	20
Five-Year Plan.....	20
99-b State Aid Intercept.....	21
Agreements of the State and the City .....	22
Competing Claims to State Aid .....	23
Financial Condition of the State .....	25
Application of Revenues.....	25
Retention Procedures.....	26
Application of State Building Aid to Pay Pre-07 S-1 Obligations.....	28
SECTION III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS.....	29
General .....	29
Mandatory Redemption .....	30
Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender of Tax-Exempt Bonds.....	30
Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender of Taxable Bonds.....	32
Multi-Modal Bonds in the Fixed Rate Mode.....	32
Notice of Redemption or Tender; Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed or Tendered .....	32
Defeasance.....	33
Other Series .....	33
Debt Service Requirements .....	34
Use of Proceeds .....	35
Book-Entry Only System.....	35
Other Information .....	37
SECTION IV: THE AUTHORITY .....	37
Purpose and Operations .....	37
Directors and Management.....	38
Other Authority Obligations .....	39
SECTION V: LITIGATION.....	39
SECTION VI: TAX MATTERS .....	40
Series 2018 S Bonds – New York Personal Income Tax Exemption .....	40
Tax-Exempt Bonds .....	40
Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount or Premium on Certain Tax-Exempt Bonds .....	41
Taxable Bonds .....	41
ERISA Considerations.....	43
SECTION VII: RATINGS .....	44
SECTION VIII: APPROVAL OF LEGALITY.....	44
SECTION IX: FINANCIAL ADVISORS.....	44
SECTION X: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS .....	44
SECTION XI: CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING.....	44
SECTION XII: UNDERWRITING.....	46
SECTION XIII: VERIFICATION .....	47
SECTION XIV: LEGAL INVESTMENT.....	47
SECTION XV: MISCELLANEOUS .....	47
APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT .....	A-1
APPENDIX B—FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND REPORT OF INDEPENDENT CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS .....	B-1
APPENDIX C—PROPOSED FORM OF BOND COUNSEL OPINION .....	C-1
APPENDIX D—BONDS TO BE REDEEMED .....	D-1

(This page intentionally left blank)



## SUMMARY OF TERMS

The following is qualified in its entirety by reference to the information appearing elsewhere in this Official Statement. Terms used in this Official Statement and not defined herein are defined in “APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT.”

Issuer ..... The New York City Transitional Finance Authority (the “Authority”) is a corporate governmental agency constituting a public benefit corporation and an instrumentality of the State of New York (the “State”).

Statutory Authorization ..... The Authority was created by the New York City Transitional Finance Authority Act (the “Enabling Act”). The Enabling Act became effective March 5, 1997, and provided for the issuance of bonds for general capital purposes of The City of New York (the “City”), the payment of bonds from Tax Revenues (which consist of Personal Income Taxes and Sales Taxes (to the extent required)), and statutory and contractual covenants of the Authority, the City and the State. In 2006, the Enabling Act was amended pursuant to Part A-3 of Chapter 58 of the Laws of New York, 2006 (the “School Financing Act”). The School Financing Act authorizes the Authority to issue Bonds, Notes or other obligations in an amount outstanding of up to \$9.4 billion to finance a portion of the City’s five-year educational facilities capital plan (the “Five-Year Plan”) and authorizes the City to assign to the Authority all or any portion of the State aid payable to the City or its school district pursuant to subdivision 6 of Section 3602 of the State Education Law, or any successor provision of State law (“State Building Aid”).

Securities Offered ..... \$500,000,000 Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “New Money Bonds”), \$575,710,000 Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Series S-4 consisting of (i) \$502,455,000 Subseries S-4A Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “Subseries S-4A Bonds” and, together with the New Money Bonds, the “Tax-Exempt Bonds”) and (ii) \$73,255,000 Subseries S-4B Taxable Bonds (the “Subseries S-4B Bonds” or the “Taxable Bonds” and, together with the Subseries S-4A Bonds, the “Refunding Bonds”; the Refunding Bonds, together with the New Money Bonds, the “Series 2018 S Bonds”) are being issued by the Authority pursuant to the School Financing Act and the Enabling Act, as amended (collectively, the “Act”), and the Amended and Restated Original Indenture, as restated December 1, 2010, as supplemented (the “Indenture”), by and between the Authority and The Bank of New York Mellon, New York, New York, as trustee (the “Trustee”).

The Series 2018 S Bonds are being issued as multi-modal bonds in the fixed rate mode. This Official Statement does not describe terms specifically applicable to such Series 2018 S Bonds bearing interest at rates other than a fixed rate. See “SECTION III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS—Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender.”

The Offering ..... The Tax-Exempt Bonds are being offered to the public, subject to prior sale, when, as and if issued by the Authority and accepted by the Underwriters.

The Taxable Bonds are being offered to the public when, as and if issued by the Authority, pursuant to a Notice of Sale, dated March 6, 2018, as supplemented.

Security for Building Aid Revenue Bonds.....

The Series 2018 S Bonds (along with all other Building Aid Revenue Bonds issued under the Indenture, the “Building Aid Revenue Bonds”) are payable by the Authority from the State Building Aid, subject to annual appropriation by the State, assigned by the City to the Authority and by the Authority to the Trustee. The Indenture permits the Authority to issue Notes and to enter into other obligations on a parity with the Building Aid Revenue Bonds (the “School Obligations”). See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS.”

In addition to Building Aid Revenue Bonds, the Authority issues bonds and notes secured by Tax Revenues, which are referred to herein as “Future Tax Secured Bonds.” Future Tax Secured Bonds include Recovery Obligations and Subordinate Bonds issued on a parity with Recovery Obligations (together “Parity Debt”) and Senior Bonds. Pursuant to the Indenture, Future Tax Secured Bonds issued prior to the date of issuance of the Authority’s Building Aid Revenue Bonds Fiscal 2007 Series S-1 dated November 16, 2006 (the “Series 2007 S-1 Bonds”) will be payable in the first instance from Tax Revenues (which consist of Personal Income Taxes and (to the extent required) Sales Taxes) and, to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient, from State Building Aid. Future Tax Secured Bonds issued after the date of issuance of the Series 2007 S-1 Bonds, operating expenses allocable thereto and ancillary and swap contracts related thereto (“Post-07 S-1 Obligations”) are secured only by Tax Revenues and will have no claim to State Building Aid. Certain Future Tax Secured Bonds that were issued prior to the Series 2007 S-1 Bonds were subsequently reissued and are no longer Pre-07 S-1 Obligations (defined below). The payment of the Building Aid Revenue Bonds is subordinate to (i) the payment of debt service on Future Tax Secured Bonds issued prior to the date of issuance of the Series 2007 S-1 Bonds and (ii) operating expenses allocable thereto (collectively, the “Pre-07 S-1 Obligations”).

Building Aid Revenue Bonds do not constitute Future Tax Secured Bonds, are not secured by Tax Revenues and are payable from State Building Aid subordinate to the payment of the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations. If Tax Revenues were not sufficient to pay the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations as well as Post-07 S-1 Obligations, State Building Aid would be applied to the payment of the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations and the amount of State Building Aid available for payment of the Building Aid Revenue Bonds would be reduced. The Authority expects that Tax Revenues will be sufficient to pay the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations and Post-07 S-1 Obligations. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Application of State Building Aid to Pay Pre-07 S-1 Obligations.”

The Authority has Outstanding \$833,490,000 of Future Tax Secured Bonds issued as Pre-07 S-1 Obligations, \$33,383,910,000 of Future Tax Secured Bonds issued as Post-07 S-1 Obligations and \$7,514,705,000 of Building Aid Revenue Bonds (not including the Series 2018 S Bonds). All outstanding Building Aid Revenue Bonds are fixed rate bonds.

The Authority has no source of payment for the Building Aid Revenue Bonds other than State Building Aid, which is subject to annual appropriation of the State.

Assignment.....

Under an Assignment of State Aid (the “Assignment”), dated October 19, 2006, as amended, the City, acting through the Mayor, has assigned to the Authority all of the State Building Aid. Pursuant to the School Financing Act, the State Building Aid and the right to receive the State Building Aid are now the

	<p>property of the Authority. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Assignment of State Building Aid.”</p>
<p>State Building Aid .....</p>	<p>The State annually appropriates money to pay for educational needs of the City’s students (“Education Aid”) pursuant to Section 3602 of the State Education Law, as amended (the “Education Law”). A portion of such Education Aid constitutes State Building Aid apportioned pursuant to subdivision 6 of Section 3602 of the Education Law which is paid, together with certain other Education Aid, pursuant to Section 3609-a of the Education Law. The Series 2018 S Bonds (along with all other Building Aid Revenue Bonds) are payable from the State Building Aid subject to annual appropriation by the State. State Building Aid is paid in support of education facilities in the State for the benefit of elementary and/or secondary school students.</p> <p>Under the Assignment, the City has assigned to the Authority all State Building Aid payable to the City since the date of the Assignment (October 19, 2006) and all State Building Aid to be received in the future by the City. Under the Indenture, State Building Aid consists of Confirmed Building Aid and Incremental Building Aid. “Confirmed Building Aid” consists of State Building Aid for projects not subject to any further statutory or administrative conditions or approvals (other than annual State appropriation), but subject to recalculation in accordance with the building aid ratios and the interest rate recalibration described herein, which is applicable for the first time during fiscal year 2018. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—State Building Aid.” “Incremental Building Aid” consists of State Building Aid to be received in the future by the Authority for City educational building projects that are approved by the New York State Education Department (the “SED”) in the future. Requests for Incremental Building Aid are made on behalf of the City by application of the New York City School Construction Authority (“SCA”) to the SED. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—State Building Aid.”</p>
<p>State Appropriation.....</p>	<p>Payment of State Building Aid is subject to annual appropriation by the State. If there is not sufficient money appropriated by the State to enable the Authority to pay the Building Aid Revenue Bonds on a timely basis, the State will not be liable to the Authority, the City or the Bondholders for any deficiency. There is no contractual relationship between the Authority and the State. The State has no obligation, contractual or otherwise, to seek an appropriation of State Building Aid. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Financial Condition of the State.”</p>
<p>Memorandum of Understanding.....</p>	<p>The State annually appropriates Education Aid to the City to pay for educational needs of the City’s students pursuant to Section 3602 of the Education Law. A portion of such Education Aid constitutes State Building Aid apportioned pursuant to subdivision 6 of Section 3602 of the Education Law which is paid, together with certain other Education Aid, pursuant to Section 3609-a of the Education Law (the “General Education Aid Payments”). The City, the Authority, the SED and the New York State Comptroller (the “State Comptroller”) entered into a Memorandum of Understanding, dated as of October 26, 2006 (the “MOU”), to determine the amount included in each General Education Aid Payment that is attributable to State Building Aid (the “Building Aid Payment”). Under the MOU, prior to each General Education Aid Payment, the Authority will calculate and certify to the SED, the State Comptroller and the Director of the Division of the Budget of the State the</p>

amount of the Building Aid Payment included in each General Education Aid Payment. In addition, the MOU provides that if permitted by applicable law, the State Comptroller shall satisfy any Competing Claims (described below) to Education Aid from Education Aid other than State Building Aid (“Other School Aid”) first and, thereafter, from State Building Aid if the expected sources of funds for the payment of the Competing Claims from Other School Aid are unavailable or insufficient. Although the MOU sets forth the understanding of the City, the Authority, the SED and the State Comptroller as to the payment of State Building Aid and Other School Aid, the MOU will not be assigned to the Trustee or pledged as security for the Building Aid Revenue Bonds. While no assurance can be given that the MOU will be legally enforceable, the School Financing Act authorizes the assignment of State Building Aid by the City to the Authority and requires the payment of State Building Aid to the Authority following such assignment. See “SECTION II—SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Memorandum of Understanding” and “—Competing Claims to State Aid.”

99-b State Aid Intercept.....

Section 99-b of the State Finance Law provides that in the event a holder or owner of any Building Aid Revenue Bond, or other bond or note issued by the Authority or the City for school purposes, shall file with the State Comptroller a verified statement describing such bond or note and alleging default in the payment thereof or the interest thereon or both, it shall be the duty of the State Comptroller to immediately investigate the circumstances of the alleged default and prepare and file in his office a certificate setting forth his determinations with respect thereto and serve a copy thereof by registered mail upon the Comptroller of the City, the Chancellor of the school district of the City (the “Chancellor”) and the chief fiscal officer of the Authority. Upon the filing of such a certificate in the office of the State Comptroller, the State Comptroller shall thereafter deduct and withhold from the next succeeding allotment, apportionment or payment of Education Aid due to the City or its school district such amount thereof as may be required to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds or notes then in default. Education Aid so withheld shall be transferred by the State Comptroller to the paying agents for the bonds or notes so in default.

Education Aid so applied pursuant to State Finance Law Section 99-b secures only bonds or notes issued for school purposes and does not secure other obligations of the Authority or the City.

See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—99-b State Aid Intercept.”

State and City Covenants.....

The Act and the Indenture contain the covenant of the State with the Bondholders (the “State Covenant”) that the State shall not limit or alter the rights vested in the Authority by the Act to fulfill the terms of the Indenture, or in any way impair the rights and remedies of such holders or the security for the Bonds until such Bonds, and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of such holders of the Bonds, are fully paid and discharged. The State Covenant does not restrict the right of the State to amend, modify, repeal or otherwise alter statutes relating to State Building Aid subject to the Assignment. However, the State, under the School Financing Act and under the Indenture, covenants that State Building Aid shall in all events (i) continue to be so payable, as assigned to the Authority, so long as the State Building Aid is paid and (ii) continue to be calculated in accordance with the same formula used for such calculation, and otherwise on the same basis as such

aid is calculated, on the date that an applicable project is approved for reimbursement from State Building Aid.

In accordance with the Act, the City will pledge and agree with the holders of the Bonds that the City will not limit or alter the rights vested by the Act in the Authority to fulfill the terms of any agreements made with such holders pursuant to the Act, or in any way impair the rights and remedies of such holders or the security for the Bonds until the Bonds are fully paid and discharged.

For more information regarding covenants of the State and City, see “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Agreements of the State and the City.”

Competing Claims to State Aid .....

The Authority’s receipt of State Building Aid to pay Building Aid Revenue Bonds is expressly subject and subordinate under the School Financing Act to prior statutory claims on State education aid and assistance (1) under Section 99-b of the State Finance Law for the benefit of the holders of any defaulted bonds of the City or defaulted Future Tax Secured Bonds of the Authority issued for school purposes, (2) for the Municipal Bond Bank Agency for the payment of its bonds issued to satisfy prior claims of the City for amounts owed to the City under the Education Law and (3) for the New York City Educational Construction Fund to restore its Debt Service Reserve Fund relating to its outstanding bonds. In addition, the State may withhold or recover State education aid or assistance payable to the City for the City’s failure to provide certain educational services (e.g., courses in special areas, certain number of instructional days, certain health services, services for handicapped students, administrative practices or willful disobedience of certain laws or directives), or to otherwise correct errors or omissions in apportionments of State education aid or assistance pursuant to subdivision 5 of Section 3604 of the Education Law as statutorily mandated. The foregoing statutory claims to State education aid and assistance and withholding or recovery of Education Aid or assistance payable to the City are collectively referred to as “Competing Claims.” The Authority does not expect that any such Competing Claims will materially reduce State Building Aid payable to the Authority. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Competing Claims to State Aid.”

Financial Condition of the State .....

The payment of State Building Aid to the Authority is dependent in part upon the financial condition of the State. State budgetary restrictions could result in delays in the payment of or reductions in the amount of State Building Aid payable to the Authority. In the event that Education Aid is reduced by the State in the future, such reduction could result in a diminished flow of State Building Aid to the Authority.

State Building Aid is payable by the State from amounts held in the State’s General Fund, upon which there are potential prior constitutional and statutory claims. Intercept of amounts held in the State’s General Fund could result in a diminished flow of State Building Aid to the Authority. In addition, the availability of Education Aid and the timeliness of payment of Education Aid could be affected by a delay in the adoption of the State budget. For information on the State, see “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Financial Condition of the State.”

Not Debt of State or City .....

The Series 2018 S Bonds are not a debt of either the State or the City, and neither the State nor the City shall be liable thereon. The State has no contractual relationship with the Authority and has no obligation, contractual or otherwise,

	<p>to seek an appropriation of State Building Aid. The Building Aid Revenue Bonds do not constitute “State supported debt” (commonly known as “State appropriation debt”) within the meaning of the State Finance Law. Therefore, the State will not be entering into any financing agreement or service contract, the principal terms of which would require the State to seek an annual appropriation and govern payments pursuant to such appropriation, in connection with the Building Aid Revenue Bonds.</p>
Additional Building Aid Revenue Bonds.....	<p>The Authority expects that it will issue other Building Aid Revenue Bonds in the future. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Additional Building Aid Revenue Bonds.”</p>
Purpose of Issue.....	<p>The proceeds of the New Money Bonds will be used to pay a portion of the costs of one or more of the Five-Year Plans approved in accordance with Section 2590-p of Education Law. The proceeds of the Refunding Bonds, together with other funds of the Authority, will be used to redeem, at or prior to maturity, the Building Aid Revenue Bonds identified in “APPENDIX D” hereto (the “Refunded Bonds”) by providing for the payment of the principal of and interest and redemption premium, if any, on the Refunded Bonds to the extent and to the payment dates shown in “APPENDIX D”. The delivery of the New Money Bonds is not contingent upon the delivery of the Refunding Bonds. The delivery of the Refunding Bonds is not contingent upon the delivery of the New Money Bonds. The delivery of the Subseries S-4A Bonds is contingent upon the delivery of the Subseries S-4B Bonds. The delivery of the Subseries S-4B Bonds is contingent on the delivery of the Subseries S-4A Bonds. The refunding of the Refunded Bonds is contingent upon the delivery of the Refunding Bonds. The Refunded Bonds were issued to finance the costs of one or more of the Five-Year Plans approved in accordance with Section 2590-p of Education Law. Certain expenses of the Authority incurred in connection with the issuance of the Series 2018 S Bonds will be paid from the proceeds of the Series 2018 S Bonds.</p>
Interest and Principal.....	<p>Interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds will accrue from their dated date at the rates set forth on the inside cover pages hereof and will be payable semiannually on January 15 and July 15 of each year, commencing July 15, 2018. The record date for payment of interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds is the last business day of the calendar month immediately preceding the interest payment date.</p> <p>Principal will be due as shown on the inside cover pages and herein.</p>
Redemption or Mandatory Tender.....	<p>The New Money Bonds maturing on July 15, 2043 and on July 15, 2045, are term bonds and are subject to mandatory redemption as described herein. See “SECTION III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS—Mandatory Redemption.”</p> <p>The Short Call Bonds (herein defined) are subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender, in each case, at the option of the Authority prior to their stated maturity dates, in whole or in part, on any date on or after July 15, 2021. The Ten-Year Call Bonds (herein defined) are subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender, in each case, at the option of the Authority prior to their stated maturity dates, in whole or in part, on any date on or after July 15, 2028. See “SECTION III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS—Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender of Tax-Exempt Bonds.”</p> <p>The Taxable Bonds are subject to the make-whole optional redemption or mandatory tender prior to their stated maturity dates at the option of the Authority, in whole or in part, on any date as described herein. See “SECTION</p>

III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS—Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender of Taxable Bonds.

Collection Account.....

All Revenues (consisting primarily of Tax Revenues and State Building Aid) received by the Authority shall be promptly deposited into the Collection Account within which there are created a Tax Revenue Subaccount and a Building Aid Subaccount. Any Tax Revenues received by the Authority shall be promptly deposited into the Tax Revenue Subaccount. Any State Building Aid received by the Authority or the Trustee shall be promptly deposited into the Building Aid Subaccount.

Application of State Building Aid .....

State Building Aid in the Building Aid Subaccount of the Collection Account shall be applied in the following order of priority, as implemented in part by the Retention Procedures: first, to Pre-07 S-1 Senior Debt (to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient); second, to the Authority's operating expenses (to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient), which may include reserves but excluding operating expenses properly allocable to Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt and Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt; third, to Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt (to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient); fourth, to the payment of Building Aid Revenue Bonds and other School Obligations; and fifth, daily or as soon as practicable but no later than the last day of each month, to the order of the City, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture.

Retention Procedures.....

To provide for the timely payment of School Obligations (including the Series 2018 S Bonds) subject to the rights of the Holders of Pre-07 S-1 Obligations, money in the Building Aid Subaccount shall be retained therein until transferred as follows:

- (1) at any time, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount or the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount, in that order of priority, to pay Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds or Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt then due and not otherwise provided for;
- (2) in the first month of each Collection Quarter;
  - (a) to the School Bond Account, beginning the first day when (i) the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their First-Month Requirements and (ii) the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance (as defined below), and continuing until the earlier of (x) the end of the month and (y) the day when the Unfunded Balance is zero; and
  - (b) to the order of the City, if no transfer to the School Bond Account is required, beginning the first day when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their First-Month Requirements and continuing until the end of the month; and
- (3) in the second and third months of each Collection Quarter;
  - (a) to the School Bond Account, beginning the first day when (i) the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their Full Requirements and (ii) the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, and continuing until the earlier of (x) the end of the Collection Quarter and (y) the day when the Unfunded Balance is zero;

- (b) to the order of the City, if no transfer to the School Bond Account is required, beginning when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount are funded to their Full Requirements and continuing until the end of the Collection Quarter; and
- (c) on the last Business Day of the Collection Quarter, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and then the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount until both of them have been funded to their Full Requirements; then to the School Bond Account, if the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, until the Unfunded Balance is zero; and then to the order of the City.

“Unfunded Balance,” with respect to the State Building Aid, means Annual School Bond Debt Service remaining to be paid in a fiscal year, plus Annual School Bond Debt Service for the following fiscal year, minus the amount held in the School Bond Account, but not less than zero.

Defeasance..... The Authority may defease any Bonds under the Indenture by depositing Defeasance Collateral with a trustee to provide for payment of principal, interest and premium, if any, thereon. See “SECTION III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS— Defeasance.”

Tax Matters..... In the opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Bond Counsel to the Authority, interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds will be exempt from personal income taxes imposed by the State or any political subdivision thereof, including the City, and assuming continuing compliance with the provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, as described herein, interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes. Interest on the Taxable Bonds will be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes. See “SECTION VI: TAX MATTERS.”

Trustee ..... The Bank of New York Mellon, New York, New York, acts as the Authority’s trustee.

Ratings..... The Series 2018 S Bonds are rated “AA” by S&P Global Ratings (“S&P”), “Aa2” by Moody’s Investors Services, Inc. (“Moody’s”) and “AA” by Fitch Ratings (“Fitch”).

Authority Contact ..... Mr. Jason Goh  
 Phone Number: (212) 788-5864  
 Email: GohJ@omb.nyc.gov



## SECTION I: INTRODUCTION

This Official Statement of the New York City Transitional Finance Authority (the “Authority”) sets forth information concerning the Authority, The City of New York (the “City”) and the State of New York (the “State”) in connection with the sale of the Authority’s \$500,000,000 Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “New Money Bonds”) and \$575,710,000 Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Series S-4 consisting of (i) \$502,455,000 Subseries S-4A Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “Subseries S-4A Bonds” and, together with the New Money Bonds, the “Tax-Exempt Bonds”) and (ii) \$73,255,000 Subseries S-4B Taxable Bonds (the “Subseries S-4B Bonds” or the “Taxable Bonds” and, together with the Subseries S-4A Bonds, the “Refunding Bonds”); the Refunding Bonds, together with the New Money Bonds, the “Series 2018 S Bonds”).

The Series 2018 S Bonds are being issued as multi-modal bonds in the fixed rate mode. This Official Statement does not describe terms specifically applicable to such Series 2018 S Bonds bearing interest at rates other than a fixed rate.

Provided certain statutory and contractual conditions are met, other series of bonds on a parity with the Series 2018 S Bonds may be issued. The Series 2018 S Bonds together with other series of Building Aid Revenue Bonds issued under the Indenture are referred to as “Building Aid Revenue Bonds.” In addition, the Indenture permits the Authority to issue Notes and to enter into other obligations on a parity with the Building Aid Revenue Bonds (collectively, the “School Obligations”). See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Additional Building Aid Revenue Bonds.”

The Authority is a corporate governmental agency constituting a public benefit corporation and an instrumentality of the State. The Authority was created by Chapter 16 of the Laws of New York, 1997 (the “Enabling Act”). The Enabling Act became effective March 5, 1997, and provided for the issuance of Bonds for general capital purposes of the City, the payment of such Bonds from the Tax Revenues (which consist of Personal Income Taxes and, to the extent required, Sales Taxes), and statutory and contractual covenants of the Authority, the City and the State. In 2006, the Enabling Act was amended pursuant to Part A-3 of Chapter 58 of the Laws of New York, 2006 (the “School Financing Act”). The School Financing Act authorizes the Authority to issue bonds, notes or other obligations in an amount outstanding of up to \$9.4 billion to finance a portion of the City’s five-year educational facilities capital plan (the “Five-Year Plan”) and authorizes the City to assign to the Authority all or any portion of the State aid payable to the City or its school district pursuant to subdivision 6 of Section 3602 of the State Education Law, or any successor provision of State law (“State Building Aid”). The City has assigned all the State Building Aid to the Authority.

The Series 2018 S Bonds are being issued by the Authority pursuant to the School Financing Act and the Enabling Act, as amended (collectively, the “Act”), and the Amended and Restated Original Indenture, as restated December 1, 2010, as supplemented (the “Indenture”), by and between the Authority and The Bank of New York Mellon, New York, New York, as trustee (the “Trustee”). The Series 2018 S Bonds (along with all other Building Aid Revenue Bonds issued under the Indenture) are payable from the State Building Aid, subject to annual appropriation by the State, assigned by the City to the Authority and by the Authority to the Trustee. The payment of State education aid of which State Building Aid is a part is subject and subordinate to certain prior statutory claims. Payment of State revenues of which State education aid is a part is also subject and subordinate to State constitutional claims. The payment of State Building Aid is dependent in part upon the financial condition of the State. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Financial Condition of the State.”

Recovery Obligations and Subordinate Bonds issued on a parity with Recovery Obligations (together, “Parity Debt”), Senior Bonds and other series of bonds and notes issued by the Authority secured by Tax Revenues are referred herein as “Future Tax Secured Bonds.” Pursuant to the Indenture, Future Tax Secured Bonds issued prior to the date of issuance of the Authority’s Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal Series 2007 S-1 dated November 16, 2006 (the “Series 2007 S-1 Bonds”) will be payable in the first instance from Tax Revenues (which consist of Personal Income Taxes and (to the extent required) Sales Taxes) and to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient, from State Building Aid. Future Tax Secured Bonds issued after the date of issuance of the Series 2007 S-1 Bonds, operating expenses allocable thereto and ancillary and swap contracts related thereto (the “Post-07 S-1 Obligations”) are secured only by Tax Revenues and will have no claim on State Building Aid. Certain Future Tax

Secured Bonds that were issued prior to the Series 2007 S-1 Bonds were subsequently reissued and are no longer Pre-07 S-1 Obligations (defined below). The payment of the Building Aid Revenue Bonds is subordinate to (i) the payment of debt service on Future Tax Secured Bonds issued prior to the date of issuance of the Series 2007 S-1 Bonds and (ii) operating expenses allocable thereto (collectively, the “Pre-07 S-1 Obligations”). A summary of certain provisions of the Indenture and the Agreement, including defined terms used therein and in this Official Statement, is contained in “APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT.”

Pursuant to an Assignment of State Aid (the “Assignment”), dated October 19, 2006, as amended, the City, acting through the Mayor, has assigned to the Authority all of the State Building Aid, and, pursuant to the School Financing Act, State Building Aid and the right to receive the State Building Aid are now the property of the Authority. State Building Aid constitutes a portion of State education aid and assistance annually appropriated by the State of New York (the “State”) to the City. Pursuant to a Memorandum of Understanding (the “MOU”), dated as of October 26, 2006, among the City, the Authority, the New York State Education Department (the “SED”) and the New York State Comptroller (the “State Comptroller”), the Authority will calculate and certify to the SED the amount of each payment of State education aid and assistance that is attributable to State Building Aid. In addition, the State Comptroller has agreed under the MOU, if permitted under applicable law, to pay competing claims from State education aid and assistance other than State Building Aid.

The factors affecting the Authority and the Building Aid Revenue Bonds described throughout this Official Statement are complex and are not intended to be described in this Introduction. This Official Statement should be read in its entirety. Capitalized terms not otherwise defined in this Official Statement are defined in “APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT.”

## **SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS**

### **General**

The Series 2018 S Bonds are to be issued by the Authority as Building Aid Revenue Bonds. Interest on and principal of the Building Aid Revenue Bonds are payable from the State Building Aid assigned to the Authority, subordinate to the payment of the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations. The Authority has no source of payment for the Building Aid Revenue Bonds other than State Building Aid. See “—Financial Condition of the State.”

The Authority also derives Revenues from federal subsidies with respect to Build America Bonds and Qualified School Construction Bonds under the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 (the “Recovery Act”), but such Revenues are not pledged to the Holders of the Series 2018 S Bonds. For a description of the application of such federal subsidies under the Indenture, see “APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT.”

**Payment of State Building Aid is subject to annual appropriation by the State. If there is not sufficient money appropriated to enable the Building Aid Revenue Bonds to be paid on a timely basis, the State will not be liable to the Authority, the City or the Bondholders for any deficiency. The State has no contractual relationship with the Authority and has no obligation, contractual or otherwise, to seek an appropriation of State Building Aid. The Building Aid Revenue Bonds do not constitute “State Supported Debt” (commonly known as “State Appropriation Debt”) within the meaning of the State Finance Law and, therefore, the State will not be entering into any financing agreement or service contract in connection with the Building Aid Revenue Bonds.**

*Bonds of the Authority are not guaranteed by the City or the State. The Authority’s bonds are not debt of the State or the City and neither the State nor the City shall be liable thereon.*

Pursuant to Section 99-b of the State Finance Law, in the event a holder or owner of any Building Aid Revenue Bond or other bond or note issued by the Authority or the City for school purposes, shall file with the State Comptroller a verified statement describing such bond or note and alleging default in its payment, the State Comptroller shall immediately investigate the default and prepare and file in his office a certificate setting forth his

determinations with respect thereto. Upon the filing of such a certificate, the State Comptroller shall thereafter deduct and withhold from the next succeeding allotment, apportionment or payment of State education aid or assistance due to the City or its school district such amount thereof as may be required to make the payment of the principal of and interest on the bonds or notes then in default. State education aid or assistance so withheld shall be transferred by the State Comptroller to the Authority's or the City's paying agent. See "—99-b State Aid Intercept."

The Authority is not authorized by State law to file a petition in bankruptcy pursuant to Title 11 (the "Bankruptcy Code") of the United States Code. Based on State and federal constitutional, statutory and case law and the terms of the Indenture, the Assignment and the Agreement, Bond Counsel is of the opinion that if the debts of the City were adjusted under the Bankruptcy Code and the City or its creditors were to assert a right to the State Building Aid equal or prior to the rights of the Bondholders, such assertion would not succeed.

### **Assignment of State Building Aid**

Pursuant to the School Financing Act, the State has authorized the City to assign to the Authority all or any portion of the State Building Aid. The City, acting through the Mayor, pursuant to the Assignment has assigned to the Authority all of the State Building Aid and, pursuant to the School Financing Act, State Building Aid and the right to receive State Building Aid are now the property of the Authority.

Under the provisions of the Assignment, the City has covenanted to preserve, protect and confirm the interest of the Authority and the Trustee (for the benefit of Bondholders) in the State Building Aid. Furthermore, under the Assignment, the City has covenanted to comply and cause the SCA (herein defined) to comply with the State Education Law (the "Education Law") in all respects material to State Building Aid, or in the event of a claim by Bondholders pursuant to Section 99-b of the State Finance Law, to State education aid or assistance. See "—State Building Aid" and "—99-b State Aid Intercept." The City has also agreed under the Assignment to file or cause to be filed timely and appropriate claims of State Building Aid in respect of all material aidable outlays and diligently prosecute such claims on behalf of the Authority. Furthermore, under the Assignment, the City has agreed to cooperate with the Authority and the Trustee in contesting any competing claim to any portion of the State Building Aid, or the Bondholders (if proceeding under Section 99-b of the State Finance Law) against any competing claim based (i) under the Education Law, (ii) on disallowance regarding prior aid funds distributed to the City or (iii) the City's failure to make any payments or comply with other constitutional or statutory mandate. The City has also agreed to promptly pay over to the Trustee any State Building Aid received by the City, including any material amount of State Building Aid diverted from the Authority on account of certain competing claims. See "—Competing Claims to State Aid."

### **Memorandum of Understanding**

The State annually appropriates money to pay for educational needs of the City's students ("Education Aid") pursuant to Section 3602 of the Education Law. A portion of such Education Aid constitutes State Building Aid apportioned pursuant to subdivision 6 of Section 3602 of the Education Law which is paid, together with certain other Education Aid, pursuant to Section 3609-a of the Education Law (the "General Education Aid Payments"). The City, the Authority, the SED and the State Comptroller have entered into the MOU to determine the amount included in each General Education Aid Payment that is attributable to State Building Aid (the "Building Aid Payment").

Under the MOU, the SED shall provide to the Authority, on each date that the SED provides vouchers to the State Comptroller for a General Education Aid Payment to the City (the date of such payment being a "Payment Date"), a schedule (the "Schedule") setting forth the apportionment of Education Aid calculated by the SED pursuant to the opening paragraph of Section 3609-a of the Education Law ("Money Apportioned"), the total apportionment of State Building Aid for the then-current school year and the amount of the General Education Aid Payment payable to the City or the Authority on the Payment Date. Upon receipt of the Schedule, the Authority shall deliver to the SED, the State Comptroller and the Director of the Division of the Budget of the State, a certification (the "TFA Certification") specifying the amount of the Building Aid Payment attributable to the then-current school year to be paid to the Authority on the Payment Date.

For each General Education Aid Payment payable to the City prior to June 1 of the then-current school year, the Authority shall determine the amount of the Building Aid Payment due on any Payment Date by deducting the amount of the Building Aid Payments attributable to the then-current school year paid to the Authority during such school year prior to such Payment Date from an amount calculated by multiplying (x) the percentage that total annual State Building Aid bears to the Money Apportioned for such school year by (y) the total of the General Education Aid Payments payable to the City or the Authority for the then-current school year paid and payable to the Authority and the City during such school year up to and including such Payment Date. The calculations described in the previous sentence will be based on the information provided by the SED in the Schedule. For the General Education Aid Payment payable to the City in June of the then-current school year, the Authority shall determine the amount of the Building Aid Payment attributable to the then-current school year due on such Payment Date by deducting the amount of the Building Aid Payments attributable to the then-current school year paid to the Authority during such school year prior to such Payment Date from the State Building Aid for such school year.

After the Authority delivers the TFA Certification to the SED, the SED shall deliver to the State Comptroller the Certification together with a written certificate (the "SED Certification") (i) that the sum of the Building Aid Payments attributable to the then-current school year paid or to be paid to the Authority through the Payment Date as set forth in the TFA Certification, does not exceed the total amount of State Building Aid apportioned on account of City educational facilities for the then-current school year and (ii) that the Building Aid Payment has been calculated in a manner consistent with the above paragraph. If the SED is unable to make the SED Certification, it will deliver an alternative written certification (the "SED Alternate Certification") to the State Comptroller specifying the amount of such State Building Aid payable for the then-current school year by deducting the amount of the Building Aid Payments attributable to the then-current school year paid to the Authority prior to such Payment Date from the State Building Aid for such school year (the "Remaining Building Aid Payment").

Upon receipt at least one business day prior to the Payment Date of (i) the TFA Certification and the Adjustment Certification (if any) described below and (ii) the SED Certification or SED Alternate Certification, and if funds are available and payment is authorized by law, such Building Aid Payment or Remaining Building Aid Payment, as the case may be, adjusted in accordance with the Adjustment Certificate, if any, shall be paid by the State Comptroller to the Authority's trustee, and the State Comptroller shall provide notice of such payment to the SED. If the TFA Certification and either the SED Certification or the SED Alternate Certification are not received prior to the Payment Date, then the entire amount of the General Education Aid Payment (less any adjustments unrelated to the MOU) shall be paid to the City.

If at the end of any school year, Building Aid Payments calculated to be payable to the Authority remain unpaid, such Building Aid Payments shall be paid from the next General Education Aid Payment.

After final review by the SED of the City's apportionment for State Building Aid for any school year, the SED shall notify the City and the Authority of the amount of such State Building Aid for such School Year.

If unpaid Building Aid Payments for a school year are payable in the next school year or if the amount specified by the SED pursuant to the preceding paragraph is not equal to the amount of total annual State Building Aid verified to the Authority in June of such school year, the Authority shall deliver a certification to the SED (the "Adjustment Certification") stating the amount of increase or decrease in the next Building Aid Payment calculated for the then-current school year necessary to reflect such change, and shall identify the school year to which each such increase or decrease is attributable. The SED shall deliver to the State Comptroller, at least one business day prior to the next Payment Date, the Adjustment Certification together with a SED Certification that the increase or decrease in the Building Aid Payment set forth in the Adjustment Certification has been calculated in a manner that is consistent with the MOU.

The MOU provides that if permitted by applicable law the State Comptroller shall satisfy any Competing Claims to Education Aid from Education Aid other than State Building Aid ("Other School Aid") first and, thereafter, from State Building Aid if the expected sources of funds for the payment of the competing claims from Other School Aid are unavailable or insufficient. "Competing Claims" include all claims to, and diversions, reductions and withholdings of, Education Aid adverse to the Authority, such as: (x) claims of (i) holders of general obligation bonds of the City issued for school purposes; (ii) holders of the State of New York Municipal Bond Bank Agency Special School Purpose Revenue Bonds; and (iii) holders of the New York City Educational Construction

Fund Revenue Bonds; and (y) State withholdings or recoveries of Education Aid for the City’s failure to provide certain educational services (e.g., courses in special areas, a certain number of instructional days, certain health services, services for handicapped students, administrative practices or willful disobedience of certain laws or directives) or to otherwise correct errors or omissions in the apportionments of Education Aid pursuant to subdivision 5 of section 3604 of the Education Law, as statutorily mandated. See “—Competing Claims to State Aid.”

Although the MOU sets forth the understanding of the City, the Authority, the SED and the State Comptroller as to the payment of State Building Aid, the MOU will not be assigned to the Trustee or pledged as security for the Building Aid Revenue Bonds. While no assurance can be given that the MOU will be legally enforceable, the School Financing Act authorizes the assignment of State Building Aid by the City to the Authority and requires the payment of State Building Aid to the Authority following such assignment.

**State Building Aid**

*General*

Pursuant to Article XI of the New York State Constitution, the State is obligated to provide for maintenance and support of a system of free common schools, wherein all the children of the State may be educated.

State Building Aid is provided, in accordance with subdivision 6 of Section 3602 of the Education Law, as a means for assisting local school districts with the cost of constructing and improving suitable and adequate elementary and/or secondary education facilities. To this end, new facilities, additions and major alterations eligible for State Building Aid must meet specific standards pertaining to functionality, building code requirements, and health and safety regulations.

The following table shows historic State Building Aid received as a result of City education projects for fiscal years 2007 through 2017:

**HISTORIC STATE BUILDING AID**

<b>Fiscal Year</b>	<b>State Building Aid (millions)</b>
2007	\$ 587.5
2008	699.5
2009	757.2
2010	839.1
2011	894.5
2012	906.7
2013	965.7
2014	1,002.7
2015	1,039.4
2016	1,094.1
2017	1,140.2

*Eligibility for State Building Aid*

Projects eligible for State Building Aid must be included in the Five-Year Plan. Eligible projects include, among others, new construction, building additions, major modernizations, rehabilitations, and system replacements. Such projects must relate to educational instructional facilities or facilities otherwise related to educational instruction. Project costs eligible for State Building Aid funding may include direct construction and equipment acquisition costs as well as incidental project costs, including site purchase, preparation and development costs and professional service fees and insurance. Such costs may relate to facilities either owned or leased by the City. In addition, lease payments relating to such facilities are also eligible for State Building Aid.

### *SED Approval and Calculation of State Building Aid*

The City, acting through the SCA, submits projects from the Five-Year Plan to the SED for review and approval on a project-by-project basis. The SED reviews each project and calculates the maximum amount of projected project costs that are eligible for State Building Aid (the “Maximum Cost Allowance” or “MCA”). Calculation of the MCA begins with a determination of a preliminary cost allowance, which is the product of the number of students the project will accommodate and State per pupil cost amounts by student type. To account for variations in construction labor costs throughout the State, the SED then applies a regional cost factor to each project. For certain projects in the City started after July 1, 2004, the MCA then receives an additional upward adjustment called the “Urban Cost Factor,” which is designed to reflect the higher costs of construction in a dense urban environment, as well as an extraordinary site acquisition cost adjustment. Once the MCA is calculated, the SED determines the aidable cost (“Aidable Cost”) of a project as the lesser of the MCA and the approved projected project cost. Upon project completion, the actual project costs are submitted to SED and Confirmed Building Aid payable in connection with such project is adjusted to reflect actual project costs.

### *Aidable Debt Service*

The SED approval process establishes, for approved projects, a schedule of “Aidable Debt Service” based on an assumed amortization schedule. For projects that are funded from bond financing or “pay-as-you-go” capital, the Aidable Debt Service schedule represents an amortization of the Aidable Costs of such projects over a 30-year period with level annual debt service payments based upon an assumed interest rate. For leased facilities, the Aidable Debt Service schedule represents the actual lease payments for the actual term of the lease. No later than September 1st of each year, the City Comptroller provides to the SED the average interest rate on all capital debt incurred by the City and the Authority and expended for school purposes during the prior fiscal year, including debt incurred to refund debt that was previously incurred for school purposes. Upon approval of the Commissioner of SED, this rate serves as the assumed interest rate used by the SED to recalculate the Aidable Debt Service for projects approved in the prior fiscal year, as well as the preliminary assumed interest rate used to calculate Aidable Debt Service for projects approved in the then-current fiscal year.

The SED determines the amount of State Building Aid apportioned and payable to the City every year for approved projects by multiplying the applicable building aid ratio (the “Selected Building Aid Ratio”) for such year, as described below, by such projects’ Aidable Debt Service for such year. The Selected Building Aid Ratios vary depending on when particular groups of projects were approved by the Chancellor of Education of the City (the “Chancellor”). Various factors are taken into account by the SED in determining the Selected Building Aid Ratios, including the Calculated Building Aid Ratio and the Incentive Aid Ratio as described below.

### *Building Aid Ratios*

Calculated Building Aid Ratio. Pursuant to subdivision 6 of Section 3602 of the State Education Law, the SED calculates a new building aid ratio for every year for each school district in the State (the “Calculated Building Aid Ratio”). The Calculated Building Aid Ratio determined every year is derived from a statutory formula based largely upon school district wealth factors that are determined based on a school district’s property value per pupil in relation to the Statewide property value per pupil. Wealth equalizing features of the formula cause a school district’s Calculated Building Aid Ratio to increase as its property value per pupil decreases relative to school districts in the State overall. The following table shows the City’s Calculated Building Aid Ratio.

## CALCULATED BUILDING AID RATIO

Fiscal Year	Calculated Building Aid Ratio
2007	52.7%
2008	50.5
2009	49.8
2010	51.1
2011	48.7
2012	49.0
2013	49.6
2014	48.2
2015	47.5
2016	46.0
2017	45.4
2018	44.7

Projects may also qualify each year for additional apportionment of State Building Aid in the form of Incentive Aid and/or through the application of a High Need Building Aid Ratio depending upon when such projects were first approved by the Chancellor.

Incentive Aid Ratio. All projects approved by the Chancellor on or after July 1, 1998 are eligible for an additional apportionment of State Building Aid (“Incentive Aid”). Incentive Aid equals the product of Aidable Debt Service and an incentive decimal computed for use in the year in which a project was approved. The incentive decimal (the “Incentive Aid Ratio”) for the City is currently 10%.

High Need Building Aid Ratio. Projects approved by the Chancellor on or after July 1, 2005 qualify for additional apportionment of State Building Aid through the application of a high-need supplemental building aid ratio (the “High Need Building Aid Ratio”). The High Need Building Aid Ratio is equal to the lesser of (i) the product (computed to three decimals without rounding) of the Selected Building Aid Ratio (as described below) multiplied by five percent, or (ii) the positive remainder of ninety-eight one hundredths less the Selected Building Aid Ratio. For the City, the High Need Building Aid Ratio is equal to the product of the Selected Building Aid Ratio multiplied by five percent.

Selected Building Aid Ratio. Although the Calculated Building Aid Ratio is determined by the SED every year, the specific Selected Building Aid Ratio utilized to compute State Building Aid payable to the City in each year for projects is the higher of the Calculated Building Aid Ratio for such year (plus the Incentive Aid Ratio, if applicable) or a prior year building aid ratio applicable to the City (plus the Incentive Aid Ratio, if applicable). The particular prior year building aid ratio applicable to projects is dependent upon the year in which such projects were first approved by the Chancellor.

For projects approved by the Chancellor prior to fiscal year 1999, the Selected Building Aid Ratio applied every year is currently the higher of the City’s Calculated Building Aid Ratio and the City’s highest Calculated Building Aid Ratio since fiscal year 1982, which is 54.7%. The Selected Building Aid Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2017 is 54.7%. The Selected Building Aid Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2018 is 54.7%.

Projects approved by the Chancellor on or after July 1, 1998 qualify for an additional State Building Aid apportionment in the form of Incentive Aid, which is currently calculated each year by multiplying the Incentive Aid Ratio by Aidable Debt Service for such projects for such year. The Selected Building Aid Ratio currently applied every year for projects approved by the Chancellor in fiscal years 1999 and 2000 is the higher of (i) the City’s Calculated Building Aid Ratio for such year plus the Incentive Aid Ratio and (ii) the City’s highest Calculated Building Aid Ratio since fiscal year 1982 plus the Incentive Aid Ratio, which is 64.7%. The Selected Building Aid

Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2017 is 64.7%. The Selected Building Aid Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2018 is 64.7%.

For projects approved by the Chancellor on or after July 1, 2000, the building aid ratio currently applied in each year to such projects is the higher of (i) the City's Calculated Building Aid Ratio for the year plus the Incentive Aid Ratio and (ii) the building aid ratio applied for the City's apportionment in fiscal year 2000, not including the additive Incentive Aid Ratio, which is 54.7%. The Selected Building Aid Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2017 is 55.4%. The Selected Building Aid Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2018 is 54.7%.

For projects approved by the Chancellor on or after July 1, 2005, the High Needs Building Aid Ratio will be applied to the Selected Building Aid Ratio. The Selected Building Aid Ratio adjusted by the High Needs Building Aid Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2017 is 57.6%. The Selected Building Aid Ratio adjusted by the High Needs Building Aid Ratio for such projects for fiscal year 2018 is 56.9%.

#### *Interest Rate Recalibration*

The Education Law provides that the assumed interest rates used by the SED to calculate Aidable Debt Service must be adjusted at the end of each ten year segment of each assumed amortization to reflect the then-current interest rate (each an "Interest Rate Recalibration"). The first such recalibration is scheduled to occur in the 2017-2018 school year, and would include all assumed amortizations for which a ten year segment ended prior to that school year. That recalibration is to be made only if such then-current interest rate is at least one-quarter of one percent lower than the rate originally used to calculate Aidable Debt Service. In addition, that recalibration may not be made if the bonds used to calculate Aidable Debt Service are precluded by state or federal law, rule or regulation from being refinanced. Based on methodology previously approved by SED, and as a result of the frequent and extensive refinancings undertaken by the City and the Authority which preclude subsequent refinancings, the Authority believes that the vast majority of such bonds is precluded from such refinancing. Consequently, the Authority currently believes that the impact of such recalibration on Aidable Debt Service and Confirmed Building Aid payable to the Authority will be minimal.

#### *Potential Cap on State Building Aid Growth*

The Governor's Executive Budget for the State's 2019 fiscal year proposes a 2% cap on annual growth of State Building Aid throughout the State. Under the proposed legislation, State Building Aid for capital projects in the City approved after July 1, 2018 would be reduced by a discount factor if statewide building aid grows by more than 2% over the prior year. This proposal is subject to enactment by the State Legislature. Projections contained in this Official Statement do not reflect an adjustment for such legislation, the impact of which is not known at this time.

#### *Confirmed Building Aid*

State Building Aid for projects not subject to any further statutory or administrative conditions or approvals (other than annual State appropriation), but subject to recalculation in accordance with the Selected Building Aid Ratio for projects approved after July 1, 2000 and the Interest Rate Recalibration described above, constitutes "Confirmed Building Aid."

The following table shows the Authority's current projection of Confirmed Building Aid. The amount of Confirmed Building Aid will vary from the amounts shown below in the future depending on, among other factors, the Selected Building Aid Ratio for projects approved after July 1, 2000 and any Interest Rate Recalibration. In addition, the amount of Confirmed Building Aid will vary when actual project costs differ from costs projected at the time a project is approved for reimbursement. See "*Incremental Building Aid*" below for a description of State Building Aid to be paid for projects that are approved by the SED in the future.



## CONFIRMED BUILDING AID

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Confirmed Building Aid (millions)</u>
2018	\$1,138.23
2019	1,132.18
2020	1,114.97
2021	1,084.49
2022	1,061.19
2023	1,042.17
2024	1,024.31
2025	1,008.64
2026	995.99
2027	979.10
2028	949.09
2029	904.55
2030	853.93
2031	790.19
2032	750.92
2033	736.02
2034	720.23
2035	696.86
2036	638.75
2037	567.12
2038	486.53
2039	413.11
2040	355.21
2041	315.19
2042	268.63
2043	220.20
2044	176.13
2045	126.40
2046	79.77
2047	33.24

Note: As of December 31, 2017.

### *Incremental Building Aid*

State Building Aid to be received for projects that are approved by the SED in the future constitutes “Incremental Building Aid.” Additional Building Aid Revenue Bonds will be payable as described herein from State Building Aid assigned to the Authority by the City under the Assignment. It is anticipated that the City will continue adopting Five-Year Plans and making expenditures thereunder that are eligible for State Building Aid in the future. It is also anticipated that the City, through SCA, will continue to make application to the SED for Incremental Building Aid, and that Incremental Building Aid will be approved by the SED as future projects under the current and future Five-Year Plans are undertaken. No assurance can be given, however, that changes to State law will not be made that would reduce the amount of State Building Aid payable with respect to projects approved in the future.

Every year, the SED determines the amount of State Building Aid payable for projects as described above under “State Building Aid.” The Authority expects that it will receive Incremental Building Aid in an amount at least equal to \$26.8 million in fiscal year 2018, \$91.9 million in fiscal year 2019, and \$113.7 million in each of fiscal years 2020 through 2047. These amounts are calculated assuming that no changes are made to State law governing the calculation of State Building Aid for projects approved in the future and that no new education projects eligible for State Building Aid are authorized in the City after the end of the Current Five-Year Plan

covering fiscal years 2015 through 2019 (the “Current Five-Year Plan”). For further information see “—Potential Cap on State Building Aid Growth.” In addition, these amounts are calculated assuming that the assumed interest rate applicable to the Incremental Building Aid is 3.0%.

#### *Payment of State Building Aid*

Pursuant to the Assignment, the City has assigned to the Authority Confirmed Building Aid and the right to receive Incremental Building Aid, and both Confirmed Building Aid and the right to receive Incremental Building Aid are now property of the Authority. The Authority receives, subject to annual State appropriation, State Building Aid regardless of the financing mechanism utilized to fund an eligible educational facility project. The City’s financing of educational facilities eligible for State Building Aid is not restricted solely to the issuance of Building Aid Revenue Bonds.

State Building Aid for all projects is aggregated by the State and paid to the City in accordance with Section 3609-a of the Education Law. The State does not distinguish payments of State Building Aid from General Education Aid Payments payable to the City. Pursuant to Section 3609-a of the Education Law, 25% of the lesser of (i) the General Education Aid Payments estimated by the SED to be payable to the City at the time of adoption of the State budget or (ii) the General Education Aid Payments estimated by the SED to be payable to the City at the time of payment are required to be paid by the State to the City no later than December 15 of each fiscal year, and the remaining amount of General Education Aid Payments must be paid to the City no later than the last business day of June of such fiscal year. The General Education Aid Payments are conditioned upon the filing by the City of certain reports required under the Education Law. The City has covenanted in the Assignment to comply with the requirements of the Education Law in all respects material to the State Building Aid, which include the requirement to file such reports.

The amount of State Building Aid payable in each year to the Authority will vary depending on, among other factors, the Selected Building Aid Ratio. In addition, the amount of future Confirmed Building Aid may vary as a result of an Interest Rate Recalibration. Furthermore, although the State has covenanted to continue to calculate State Building Aid in accordance with the formula used on the date an applicable project is approved for reimbursement, no assurance can be given that the Calculated Building Aid Ratio will remain stable in accordance with historic levels or that the Incentive Aid Ratio or the High Need Building Aid Ratio will continue. In addition, payment of State Building Aid is dependent in part upon the financial condition of the State. See “—Financial Condition of the State.”

The following table shows debt service coverage for Building Aid Revenue Bonds by Confirmed Building Aid.

**DEBT SERVICE COVERAGE FOR  
BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS BY CONFIRMED  
BUILDING AID**

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Confirmed Building Aid (millions)<sup>(1)</sup></u>	<u>Debt Service (retention basis) (millions)<sup>(2)</sup></u>	<u>Coverage</u>
2018	\$1,138.23	\$511.56	2.22x
2019	1,132.18	547.22	2.07
2020	1,114.97	547.01	2.04
2021	1,084.49	549.13	1.97
2022	1,061.19	618.20	1.72
2023	1,042.17	617.71	1.69
2024	1,024.31	617.72	1.66
2025	1,008.64	617.56	1.63
2026	995.99	614.97	1.62
2027	979.10	615.65	1.59
2028	949.09	615.96	1.54
2029	904.55	615.83	1.47
2030	853.93	613.13	1.39
2031	790.19	614.62	1.29
2032	750.92	612.77	1.23
2033	736.02	613.23	1.20
2034	720.23	612.87	1.18
2035	696.86	612.52	1.14
2036	638.75	571.37	1.12
2037	567.12	488.72	1.16
2038	486.53	397.86	1.22
2039	413.11	245.73	1.68
2040	355.21	245.48	1.45
2041	315.19	205.26	1.54
2042	268.63	182.05	1.48
2043	220.20	147.32	1.49
2044	176.13	102.84	1.71
2045	126.40	51.50	2.45
2046	79.77	32.01	2.49
2047	33.24	30.22	1.10

---

<sup>(1)</sup> As of December 31, 2017. Does not reflect changes in Confirmed Building Aid relating to the Selected Building Aid Ratio for projects approved after July 1, 2000.

<sup>(2)</sup> Reflects debt service on Outstanding Building Aid Revenue Bonds and debt service on the Series 2018 S Bonds, but excludes debt service on bonds to be refunded with the Refunding Bonds. Debt service is shown in the year State Building Aid is retained by the Authority, rather than in the year paid.

## **Additional Building Aid Revenue Bonds**

The School Financing Act authorizes the issuance of Bonds, Notes or other obligations in an amount outstanding of up to \$9.4 billion to finance a portion of one or more of the Five-Year Plans. The Authority expects that it will issue other Building Aid Revenue Bonds in the future. The Authority may from time to time request the authentication and delivery of an additional Series of Building Aid Revenue Bonds by providing to the Trustee, among other documents, an Officer's Certificate setting forth:

(i) Annual School Bond Debt Service, including debt service on such Series of Building Aid Revenue Bonds in each Series Fiscal Year; and

(ii) the Confirmed Building Aid payable in the fiscal year preceding each Series Fiscal Year, which shall at least be equal to the amount set forth in clause (i) for each Series Fiscal Year.

For purposes of the above certificate, each interest rate on Outstanding and on any proposed variable-rate Building Aid Revenue Bonds (if not economically fixed by a Qualified Swap, a liquidity account, or otherwise with Rating Confirmation) shall be assumed at the maximum rate payable to investors other than parties to an ancillary contract.

Implementation of the Five-Year Plan is dependent on the City's and the Authority's ability to successfully market their bonds and notes. The success of projected sales of City and Authority bonds and notes will be subject to prevailing market conditions.

## **Five-Year Plan**

The Five-Year Plan is the mechanism by which the City plans, funds and manages all capital investments in its public school facilities. The rules governing the preparation and maintenance of each Five-Year Plan are established pursuant to the Education Law. The Current Five-Year Plan, covering fiscal years 2015 through 2019, totals approximately \$16.5 billion.

The school system of the State is divided into school districts. The school district of the City is known as the Department of Education, which is a corporate body separate from the City (the "DOE"). Each Five-Year Plan, which is amended from time to time, is prepared by the Chancellor and contains the following categories of work: new construction; building additions; major modernization and rehabilitation; athletic fields, playgrounds and pools; system replacements; security and educational enhancements; and emergency, unspecified and miscellaneous. The Five-Year Plan must describe each of these categories and estimate the cost of each category, the capital funding required each year and the expected sources of such funding. The Five-Year Plan must also set forth an estimate of the cost of each project identified in the Five-Year Plan and state the year in which each such project is to be initiated.

Each Five-Year Plan is managed and administered by the SCA pursuant to the New York State Public Authorities Law. The SCA has the duty to: design, construct, reconstruct, improve, rehabilitate, maintain, furnish, repair, equip and otherwise provide for educational facilities as defined under State Education Law and acquire property through purchase or condemnation therefor. The three-member SCA Board consists of the Chancellor and two other members appointed by the Mayor.

All State Building Aid is payable by the State, subject to annual appropriation, regardless of how approved project costs are financed. Capital expenditures under the Five-Year Plan may be financed using different obligations, such as (i) general obligation bonds or notes issued by the City, (ii) Future Tax Secured Bonds or notes issued by the Authority for general City capital purposes or (iii) Building Aid Revenue Bonds issued by the Authority. Pursuant to the Assignment, all State Building Aid payable in respect of all approved education projects is payable to the Authority regardless of whether such projects are financed through general obligation bonds of the City, Future Tax Secured Bonds, Building Aid Revenue Bonds or any other method.

## **99-b State Aid Intercept**

Section 99-b of the State Finance Law provides that in the event a holder or owner of any Building Aid Revenue Bond, or other bond or note issued by the Authority or the City for school purposes, shall file with the State Comptroller a verified statement describing such bond or note and alleging default in the payment thereof or the interest thereon or both, it shall be the duty of the State Comptroller to immediately investigate the circumstances of the alleged default and prepare and file in his office a certificate setting forth his determinations with respect thereto and serve a copy thereof by registered mail upon the Comptroller of the City, the Chancellor and the chief fiscal officer of the Authority. Such investigation by the State Comptroller shall cover the current status with respect to the payment of principal of and interest on all outstanding bonds or notes issued for school purposes, and the statement prepared and filed by the State Comptroller pursuant to the foregoing shall set forth a description of all bonds or notes issued for school purposes, found to be in default and the amount of principal and interest thereon past due. Upon the filing of such a certificate in the office of the State Comptroller, the State Comptroller shall thereafter deduct and withhold from the next succeeding allotment, apportionment or payment of Education Aid due to the City or its school district such amount thereof as may be required to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds or notes issued for school purposes, then in default. Education Aid so withheld shall be transferred by the State Comptroller to the respective paying agents.

In the event such Education Aid so withheld shall be insufficient to pay all of the principal of and interest on the bonds or notes issued for school purposes that are in default, the State Comptroller shall similarly deduct and withhold from each succeeding allotment, apportionment or payment of such Education Aid due the City or its school district, such amount or amounts thereof as may be required to pay all of the principal of and interest on the bonds or notes issued for school purposes, then in default and to cure such default. Allotments, apportionments and payments of such Education Aid so deducted or withheld by the State Comptroller shall be forwarded promptly to each applicable paying agent for the sole purpose of the payment of defaulted principal of and interest on such bonds or notes; provided, however, that in the event any such allotment, apportionment or payment of such Education Aid so deducted or withheld shall be less than the total amount of all principal and interest on the bonds or notes in default with respect to which the same was so deducted or withheld, then the State Comptroller shall forward to the paying agent an amount in the proportion that the amount of such bonds or notes in default bears to the total amount of principal of and interest then in default on such bonds or notes.

Total projected Education Aid to the City is approximately \$10.7 billion in fiscal year 2018. Education Aid so applied pursuant to Section 99-b of the State Finance Law secures only the bonds or notes issued for school purposes and does not secure other obligations of the Authority or the City. The payment of Education Aid to the City is subject to annual appropriation by the State. In addition, no assurance can be given that, in the event of the State's failure to appropriate Education Aid in amounts sufficient to pay State Building Aid, that Education Aid would be sufficient to cure a deficiency pursuant to Section 99-b of State Finance Law.

The State covenants with the Holders of the Building Aid Revenue Bonds (among others) that it will not repeal, revoke or rescind the provisions of Section 99-b or amend or modify the same so as to limit, impair or impede the rights and remedies granted thereby; but nothing in Section 99-b shall be deemed or construed as requiring the State to continue the payment of Education Aid to the City or as limiting or prohibiting the State from repealing or amending any law relating to Education Aid, the manner and time of payment or apportionment thereof, or the amount thereof.

Set forth below is the total amount of Education Aid paid to the City for fiscal years 2007 through 2017 and Education Aid projected to be paid to the City for fiscal year 2018.

**EDUCATION AID**

Fiscal Year	Education Aid (millions)
2007	\$6,954.40
2008	7,756.59
2009	8,622.35 <sup>(1)</sup>
2010	7,984.01 <sup>(1)</sup>
2011	7,945.83
2012	7,787.09
2013	7,929.08
2014	8,645.52
2015	9,043.34
2016	9,834.12
2017	10,343.96
2018	10,725.59 <sup>(2)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> The decrease in Education Aid from 2009 to 2010 is due to State reductions in aid which was replaced by federal funds under the Recovery Act.

<sup>(2)</sup> Projected.

The nature and extent of the impact of future State budgets on Education Aid to the City is uncertain and no assurance can be given that State actions included in future State budgets may not have an adverse impact on Education Aid paid to the City.

**Agreements of the State and the City**

The Act and the Indenture contain the covenant of the State with the Bondholders that the State shall not limit or alter the rights vested in the Authority by the Act to fulfill the terms of the Indenture or in any way impair the rights and remedies of such holders or the security for the Bonds until such Bonds, and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of such holders of the Bonds, are fully paid and discharged. This covenant does not restrict the right of the State to amend, modify, repeal or otherwise alter statutes relating to State Building Aid subject to the Assignment. However, the State, under the School Financing Act and under the Indenture, covenants that State Building Aid shall in all events (i) continue to be so payable, as assigned to the Authority, so long as the State Building Aid is paid, and (ii) continue to be calculated in accordance with the same formula used for such calculation, and otherwise on the same basis as such aid is calculated, on the date that an applicable project is approved for reimbursement from State Building Aid.

In accordance with the Act, the City will pledge and agree with the holders of the Bonds that the City will not limit or alter the rights vested by the Act in the Authority to fulfill the terms of any agreements made with such holders pursuant to the Act, or in any way impair the rights and remedies of such holders or the security for the Bonds until the Bonds are fully paid and discharged.

The Bonds are not a debt of either the State or the City, and neither the State nor the City is liable thereon. The State has no contractual relationship with the Authority and has no obligation, contractual or otherwise, to seek an appropriation of State Building Aid. The Building Aid Revenue Bonds do not constitute “State supported debt” within the meaning of the State Finance Law. The State will not be entering into a continuing disclosure agreement with respect to the Building Aid Revenue Bonds.

The covenants of the City and the State described above shall be of no force and effect with respect to any Building Aid Revenue Bond if there is on deposit in trust with a bank or trust company sufficient cash or Defeasance Collateral to pay when due all principal of, applicable redemption premium, if any, for and interest on, such Building Aid Revenue Bond.

## Competing Claims to State Aid

*Prior Claims Under the Act.* The Authority's receipt of Education Aid, of which State Building Aid is a part, is subject and subordinate to the competing claims described below.

### *Direct Claims*

MBBA Bonds. Bonds have been issued by the New York Municipal Bond Bank Agency ("MBBA") pursuant to the State of New York Municipal Bond Bank Agency Act, Title 18 of Article VIII of the Public Authorities Law of the State of New York, as amended (the "MBBA Act"), to fund the cost of making a payment to the City in satisfaction of prior year claims owed to the City under Section 3604 of the Education Law. Pursuant to the MBBA Act, the Chairman of the MBBA is required to deliver annually a certificate to the State Comptroller and the Director of the Budget of the State, certifying the amount of public funds apportioned or otherwise made payable by the State to the City as provided in Article 73 of the Education Law necessary for payment of (i) interest, principal and redemption premium, if any, maturing or otherwise becoming due during the subsequent State fiscal year on the MBBA Bonds; (ii) the amounts required to be deposited to the Debt Service Reserve Fund with respect to the MBBA Bonds; and (iii) any and all amounts required for the purpose of satisfying any rebate obligation to the Federal government. Upon receipt of such certification, the State Comptroller is required to transfer to the MBBA such Education Aid to the extent so stated in such certificate. The payments of Education Aid to the MBBA are not dependent upon annual appropriation by the City. Principal of the MBBA Bonds is amortized through the period ending December 1, 2022. The maximum annual debt service on the MBBA Bonds is approximately \$40.4 million.

### *Contingent Claims*

City General Obligation Bonds and Authority Future Tax Secured Bonds. The State Finance Law Section 99-b provides protection against any default on debt issued for school purposes by the Authority or any city or school district up to the limits of that entity's education aid. If a city, a school district or the Authority defaults in the payment of the principal of its bonds and notes issued for school purposes, the State is to withhold from the next payment of education aid made to the city or school district, an amount required to cure such default in the payment of such bonds. The City issues General Obligation Bonds and the Authority issues Future Tax Secured Bonds for school purposes as part of bond issues that also finance many other purposes of the City. If the City or the Authority should default on any such bond issue that includes financing for school purposes, there would be withheld from the Education Aid payable to the City an amount sufficient to cure such default on the bonds issued for school purposes, and any such amount so withheld could reduce the amount of available Education Aid (of which State Building Aid is a part) to pay the Building Aid Revenue Bonds. Projected debt service for fiscal year 2018 on the City's General Obligation Bonds issued for school purposes, outstanding as of June 30, 2017, is approximately \$1.06 billion, without reflecting prepayments by the City. Projected debt service for fiscal year 2018 on the Authority's Future Tax Secured Bonds issued for school purposes, outstanding as of June 30, 2017, is approximately \$736 million, without reflecting prepayments by the City.

New York City Educational Construction Fund. Bonds have been issued by the New York City Educational Construction Fund (the "ECF") pursuant to Article 10 of the Education Law (the "ECF Act") to fund the cost of combined occupancy structures consisting of improvements to real property containing school accommodations or other facilities of the DOE with compatible and lawful non-school uses. Bonds of the ECF are secured by a debt service reserve fund (the "ECF Debt Service Reserve Fund") in an amount equal to the maximum amount of principal and sinking fund installments of and interest on outstanding bonds issued by the ECF becoming due in the then-current or any succeeding calendar year.

To further assure maintenance of the ECF Debt Service Reserve Fund, the ECF Act requires the DOE to pay to the ECF for deposit in the ECF Debt Service Reserve Fund such sum, if any, as has been certified by the Chairman of the ECF to the DOE, the Mayor and the Director of Management and Budget of the City as necessary to restore the ECF Debt Service Reserve Fund to the ECF Debt Service Reserve Requirement. Such sum is to be paid from moneys appropriated and paid by the City to the DOE or from moneys otherwise lawfully available to the DOE for such purpose. The Chairman of the ECF annually, not later than February 1 in each calendar year, is to make and deliver to the DOE, the Mayor and the Director of Management and Budget of the City a certificate stating the amount, if any, required to restore the ECF Debt Service Reserve Fund to the required amount, and the

amount so stated is to be paid to the ECF by the DOE during the then-current fiscal year of the ECF. In the event of the failure or inability of the DOE to pay over the stated amount to the ECF on or before August 1 of the same calendar year, the Chairman of the ECF is to make and deliver to the State Comptroller a further certificate restating the amount so required and, after the State Comptroller has given written notice to the Commissioner of Education of the State, the Mayor and the Director of Management and Budget of the City, such amount is to be paid over to the ECF by the State Comptroller out of the next payment of Education Aid apportioned to the City for the support of common schools or such other aid or assistance payable in support of common schools as may have superseded or supplemented such State aid for the support of common schools, including federal moneys apportioned by the State to the City for the support of common schools. The maximum annual debt service on outstanding ECF Bonds is approximately \$19.2 million.

#### *Other Competing Claims*

Certain State programs provide for statutory application or withholding of State aid and local assistance as security for the repayment of obligations of, or the repayment of financial assistance provided to, the City including but not limited to the following relating to: loan agreements with the Environmental Facilities Corporation (“EFC”) for water pollution control projects under Section 1285-j(11) of the Public Authorities Law; financing agreements with the EFC with respect to the Drinking Water Revolving Fund program under Section 1285-m of the Public Authorities Law; the MBBA under Section 2436 of the Public Authorities Law; the New York State Sports Authority under Section 2473 of the Public Authorities Law; acquisition, construction or maintenance costs of alternative correctional facilities under Section 89-h of the Corrections Law; and failure of the City to make a payment due to the Design and Construction Account of the Hazardous Waste Remedial Fund under Section 97-b of the State Finance Law. The City does not currently participate in the foregoing programs and does not currently expect to participate in such programs in the future. Also, Section 54-a of the State Finance Law provides that, if the City levies or causes to be levied taxes upon real property in excess of constitutional limitations, the State Comptroller may withhold local assistance by the State to the City to the extent of such excess.

In addition, the State may withhold or reduce Education Aid, and in certain cases must withhold or reduce such aid, upon the City’s failure to provide statutorily mandated courses of instruction in a number of special areas, upon the City’s failure to provide the statutorily required number of instructional days, upon the City’s failure to provide certain health services, upon the City’s failure to provide certain statutorily mandated services for handicapped students, upon the City’s failure to make any required payment for the maintenance or operation of charter schools in the City, upon the City’s noncompliance with certain other statutorily mandated administrative practices or upon the City’s willful disobedience of certain laws or directives. During the last 10 years, no Education Aid has been withheld from the City for failure to meet the above-mentioned requirements.

The Authority’s receipt of the State Building Aid could also be affected by withholding of Education Aid, of which State Building Aid is a part, in satisfaction of any disallowance regarding prior aid funds distributed to the City. The City and the Authority expect that any assertion of a disallowance that might otherwise materially affect the Education Aid would be satisfied either by the State’s withholding of aid payments other than the State Building Aid or by repayment by the City to the State of the amount of the disallowance.

#### *Effect of Claims on State Building Aid*

Statutory application and intercept of Education Aid for any of the above purposes or any other purpose could have the result of diminishing the amount of State Building Aid paid to the Authority as well as diminishing Education Aid subject to intercept by the State Comptroller under Section 99-b of the State Finance Law. Furthermore, the City may in the future participate in financing programs incorporating procedures for the application or withholding of Education Aid for the repayment of obligations of, or the repayment of financial assistance provided to, the City. In addition, the State may institute, with or without the consent of the City or the Authority, programs for the diversion or withholding of Education Aid otherwise payable to the City. Any such future application or diversion of Education Aid could also affect the flow of State Building Aid to the Authority. Notwithstanding the foregoing, pursuant to the MOU, the State Comptroller has agreed, if permitted by applicable law, to apply Competing Claims, if any are exercised, against Education Aid payable to the City rather than against State Building Aid payable to the Authority. No assurance can be given that the MOU will be legally enforceable. The City has also agreed under the Assignment to promptly pay any material amount of State Building Aid diverted



from the Authority on account of the Competing Claims described under the headings “*Direct Claims*” and “*Contingent Claims*” above as well as any amounts resulting from administrative reviews, audits or other procedures relating to Education Aid other than Building Aid. See “—Assignment of State Building Aid.”

### **Financial Condition of the State**

The payment of State Building Aid to the Authority is dependent in part upon the financial condition of the State. State budgetary restrictions could result in delays in the payment of or reductions in the amount of State Building Aid payable to the Authority. In the event that Education Aid or assistance is reduced by the State in the future, such reduction could result in a diminished flow of State Building Aid to the Authority. In addition, the availability of Education Aid and the timeliness of payment of Education Aid could be affected by a delay in the adoption of the State budget.

Information about the State is contained in the 2017-18 Annual Information Statement of the State, dated June 20, 2017, and the update thereto, dated as of February 28, 2018 (collectively, the “AIS”), which is included herein by specific reference and may be obtained at [www.budget.ny.gov](http://www.budget.ny.gov).

Financial information relating to the State is also contained in the Comprehensive Annual Financial Report for Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2017 of the New York State Comptroller (the “CAFR”) and in the State’s Basic Financial Statements and Other Supplementary Information for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017. Copies of the CAFR and such financial statements may be obtained at [www.osc.state.ny.us](http://www.osc.state.ny.us).

The Authority did not prepare the information contained in the AIS or the CAFR. The Authority makes no representations about State information or its continued availability. The State has not obligated itself to provide continuing disclosure in connection with the offering of the Series 2018 S Bonds. The Authority has not and will not receive a certification from the State as to the accuracy of the information contained or included by specific reference herein. The AIS and the CAFR speak as of their respective dates, and subsequent events may have occurred or may occur that affect the presentations in those documents, some of which may be material.

### **Application of Revenues**

Upon receipt of (i) Personal Income Tax Revenues, (ii) Sales Tax Revenues, if any are required to be paid to the Authority, and (iii) State Building Aid, the Trustee must deposit such amounts into the Collection Account held by the Trustee.

Tax Revenue shall be deposited in the Tax Revenue Subaccount of the Collection Account and applied upon receipt by the Trustee in the following order of priority: first, to the Bond Account to pay Senior Debt Service in accordance with the Retention Procedures described below; second, to the Authority’s operating expenses, including deposits to the Redemption Account for optional redemption of the Senior Bonds, if any, and any reserves held by the Authority for payment of operating expenses; third, pursuant to Supplemental Indentures to the Recovery and Parity Debt Account or otherwise for the benefit of Noteholders, Subordinate Bondholders and parties to ancillary and swap contracts (other than Senior Agreements), to the extent such Supplemental Indentures may require application of Revenues to pay items after payments of Senior Debt Service and operating expenses; fourth, pursuant to each Officer’s Certificate making reference to this level of priority in accordance with the Indenture; and fifth, to the City as soon as available but not later than the last day of each month, excess Revenues, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture.

State Building Aid shall be deposited in the Building Aid Subaccount of the Collection Account and applied in the following order of priority, as implemented in part by the Retention Procedures (set forth below); first, to Pre-07 S-1 Senior Debt (to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient); second, to the Authority’s operating expenses (to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient), which may include reserves but excluding operating expenses properly allocable to Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt and Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt; third, to Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt (to the extent that Tax Revenues are insufficient); fourth, to the payment of Building Aid Revenue Bonds and other School Obligations; and fifth, daily or as soon as practicable but not later than the last day of each month, to the order of the City, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture.

## Retention Procedures

A quarterly retention mechanism has been adopted by the Authority to provide for payment of debt service on Future Tax Secured Bonds. For each three-month period commencing August, November, February and May (each such period, a "Collection Quarter"), the Trustee shall begin on the first business day of the first month of each Collection Quarter to transfer Tax Revenues from the Tax Revenue Subaccount to each subaccount of the Bond Account in proportion to the unfunded balance of each First-Month Requirement, and shall continue such transfers until the amount in each subaccount is equal to the First-Month Requirement. On the first day of the second month of each Collection Quarter, the Trustee shall resume or continue such transfers, in proportion to the unfunded balance of each Full Requirement, until the Full Requirement is held in each subaccount.

After all payments are made to the Bond Account, as described above, and for Authority operating expenses, money on deposit in the Tax Revenue Subaccount will be applied in accordance with a quarterly retention method adopted by the Authority to provide for payment of debt service on Parity Debt. The Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount and the Post-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount are subaccounts in the Recovery Account. At the beginning of each Collection Quarter, the Trustee shall begin to transfer Tax Revenues to each subaccount in the Recovery Account in proportion to the unfunded balance of each First-Month Requirement and shall continue such transfers until the amount in each subaccount is equal to the First-Month Requirement and on the first Business Day of the second month of each Collection Quarter, the Trustee shall resume or continue such transfers, in proportion to the unfunded balance of each Full Requirement, until the Full Requirement is held in each subaccount.

To provide for the timely payment of School Obligations (including the Series 2018 S Bonds) subject to the rights of the Holders of Pre-07 S-1 Senior Debt and Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt, money in the Building Aid Subaccount shall be retained therein until transferred as follows:

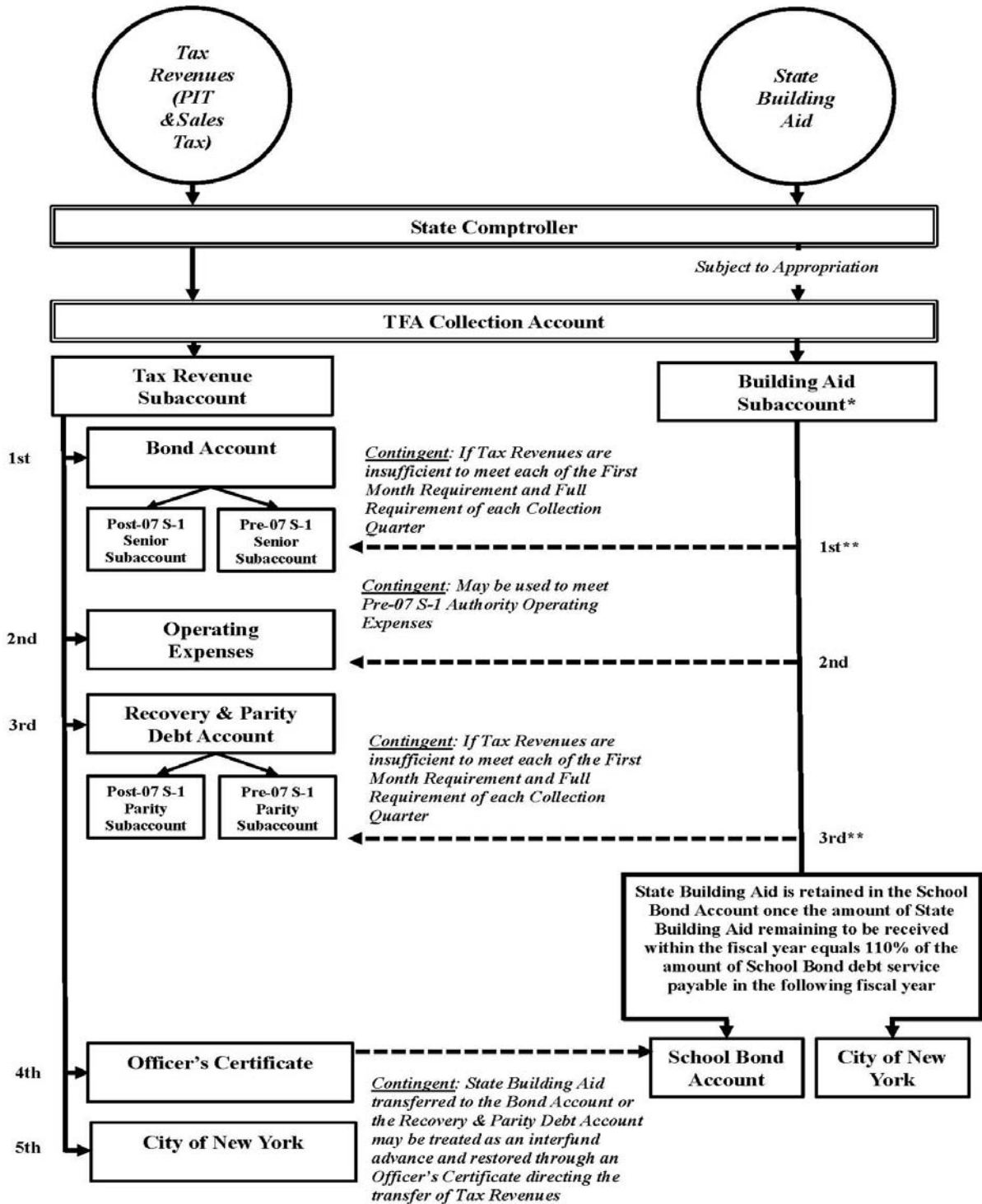
(1) at any time, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount or the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount, in that order of priority, to pay Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds or Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt then due and not otherwise provided for;

(2) in the first month of each Collection Quarter, (a) to the School Bond Account beginning the first day when (i) the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their First-Month Requirements and (ii) the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, and continuing until the earlier of (x) the end of the month and (y) the day when the Unfunded Balance is zero; and (b) to the order of the City, if no transfer to the School Bond Account is required, beginning the first day when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their First-Month Requirements and continuing until the end of the month; and

(3) in the second and third months of each Collection Quarter, (a) to the School Bond Account beginning the first day when (i) the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their Full Requirements and (ii) the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, and continuing until the earlier of (x) the end of the Collection Quarter and (y) the day when the Unfunded Balance is zero; (b) to the order of the City, if no transfer to the School Bond Account is required, beginning when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount are funded to their Full Requirements and continuing until the end of the Collection Quarter; and (c) on the last Business Day of the Collection Quarter, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and then the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount until both of them have been funded to their Full Requirements; then to the School Bond Account, if the Remaining State Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, until the Unfunded Balance is zero; and then to the order of the City.

For a description of the application under the Indenture of federal subsidies under the Recovery Act with respect to Build America Bonds and Qualified School Construction Bonds, see "APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT."

**SUMMARY OF COLLECTION AND APPLICATION OF REVENUES**



\* State Building Aid is available to pay debt service coming due and payable but not already provided for with respect to Senior Bonds and Parity Debt, issued prior to the Fiscal 2007 Series S-1 Building Aid Revenue Bonds.

\*\* Within the respective retention period, once each of the First-Month and Full Requirement is satisfied, State Building Aid flows to either the School Bond Account or the City of New York.

**Application of State Building Aid to Pay Pre-07 S-1 Obligations**

Pursuant to the Indenture, the Building Aid Revenue Bonds are payable only from the State Building Aid and not from the Tax Revenues. Future Tax Secured Bonds are secured by Tax Revenues. The application of State Building Aid to pay the Building Aid Revenue Bonds is subject to priorities under the Indenture in favor of the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations. If Tax Revenues were not sufficient to pay Pre-07 S-1 Obligations, as well as Post-07 S-1 Obligations, State Building Aid on deposit in the Collection Account would be applied to the payment of the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations and the amount of State Building Aid available for payment of the Building Aid Revenue Bonds would be reduced. The Authority has Outstanding \$833,490,000 of Future Tax Secured Bonds issued as Pre-07 S-1 Obligations, \$33,383,910,000 of Future Tax Secured Bonds issued as Post-07 S-1 Obligations and \$7,514,705,000 of Building Aid Revenue Bonds (not including the Series 2018 S Bonds). The Authority expects that Tax Revenues will be sufficient to pay the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations and Post-07 S-1 Obligations.

The amount of future Tax Revenues to be collected depends upon various factors including the economic conditions in the City. The forecasts of Tax Revenues are not intended to be guarantees of actual collections and results may vary from forecasts. Economic conditions in the City have reflected numerous cycles of growth and recession. There can be no assurance that historical data relating to economic conditions in the City are predictive of future trends or that forecasts of future economic developments will be realized.

The following table shows debt service coverage by historical Tax Revenues based on actual retention for debt service on Outstanding Future Tax Secured Bonds.

**DEBT SERVICE COVERAGE FOR OUTSTANDING FUTURE TAX SECURED BONDS  
BY HISTORICAL TAX REVENUES**

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Tax Revenues (millions)<sup>(1)</sup></u>	<u>Coverage<sup>(2)</sup></u>
2013 .....	\$15,365	9.10x
2014 .....	15,999	9.70
2015 .....	17,379	8.62
2016 .....	18,081	9.54
2017 .....	18,097	8.82

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: NYC OMB. Figures shown are calculated on a cash basis. Figures do not reflect deductions for expenses of the New York State Financial Control Board and the Office of the State Deputy Comptroller (“State Oversight Retention Requirements”).

<sup>(2)</sup> Coverage is based on total Tax Revenues indicated divided by Tax Revenues required to be retained by the Authority in such year for debt service, calculated without giving effect to prepayments of Authority debt or debt service with moneys other than Tax Revenues.

The following table shows projected debt service coverage by projected Tax Revenues on Future Tax Secured Bonds in fiscal years 2018 through 2022.

**PROJECTED DEBT SERVICE COVERAGE FOR FUTURE TAX  
SECURED BONDS BY PROJECTED TAX REVENUES**

<u>Fiscal Year</u>	<u>Tax Revenues (millions)<sup>(1)</sup></u>	<u>Debt Service (millions)<sup>(2)</sup></u>	<u>Coverage</u>
2018.....	\$19,266	\$2,604	7.40x
2019.....	20,159	3,021	6.67
2020.....	21,052	3,298	6.38
2021.....	21,916	3,609	6.07
2022.....	22,487	3,945	5.70

<sup>(1)</sup> Forecast. Source: NYC Office of Management and Budget. Figures do not reflect deductions for State Oversight Retention Requirements and do not reflect State legislation which, unless amended in the future, will reduce the Sales Tax Revenues projected above by \$150 million in fiscal year 2019.

<sup>(2)</sup> Figures are calculated based on Outstanding Future Tax Secured Bonds and bonds projected to be issued assuming interest rates of 4.25% on Outstanding tax-exempt variable rate bonds and 6% on all bonds projected to be issued through 2021. The Authority currently expects to issue an additional \$1.2 billion of Future Tax Secured Bonds in the remainder of fiscal year 2018, and aggregate amounts of \$4.0 billion, \$4.8 billion, \$4.8 billion and \$4.4 billion in fiscal years 2019 through 2022, respectively. Projections do not reflect the federal subsidy on Build America Bonds and Qualified School Construction Bonds. Projections are based on amounts of Tax Revenues to be retained by the Authority and are calculated without giving effect to prepayments of Authority debt or debt service with moneys other than Tax Revenues.

The Governor’s Executive Budget for the State’s 2019 fiscal year proposes an optional State payroll tax for employers, accompanied by a credit for employees against State personal income taxes. In addition, the Governor’s Executive Budget includes a proposal to allow taxpayers to make contributions to a charitable trust established by the State, accompanied by a credit against State personal income tax. If enacted, such legislation would be expected to result in lower taxable income levels, but would not be expected to significantly reduce the debt service coverage levels on Outstanding Future Tax Secured Bonds described above. If the City were to seek similar legislation with respect to a City payroll tax and the establishment of a City charitable trust, along with accompanying credits against the City personal income tax, Tax Revenues would be reduced but would be projected to significantly exceed debt service on Outstanding Future Tax Secured Bonds.

**SECTION III: THE SERIES 2018 S BONDS**

**General**

The Series 2018 S Bonds will be dated the date of their delivery, will bear interest at the rates and will mature on the dates as set forth on the inside cover pages of this Official Statement unless redeemed or tendered prior to maturity, if subject to redemption or tender. All of the Series 2018 S Bonds will be issued in book-entry only form. The Series 2018 S Bonds are payable from State Building Aid, subordinate to payment of the Pre-07 S-1 Obligations. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS.”

The Series 2018 S Bonds will be issued in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, and will bear interest calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of 30-day months. Interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds accrues from their dated date, and is payable on each January 15 and July 15, commencing July 15, 2018.

The Series 2018 S Bonds are being issued as multi-modal bonds in the fixed rate mode. This Official Statement does not describe terms specifically applicable to such Series 2018 S Bonds bearing interest at rates other than a fixed rate.

## Mandatory Redemption

The New Money Bonds maturing on July 15, 2043 are term bonds subject to mandatory redemption at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest, without premium, on the dates and in the amounts set forth below.

<u>July 15,</u>	<u>Principal Amount to be Redeemed</u>
2040	\$22,525,000
2041	23,650,000
2042	24,835,000
2043 <sup>(1)</sup>	26,075,000

---

<sup>(1)</sup> Stated maturity.

The New Money Bonds maturing on July 15, 2045 are term bonds subject to mandatory redemption at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest, without premium, on the dates and in the amounts set forth below.

<u>July 15,</u>	<u>Principal Amount to be Redeemed</u>
2044	\$27,380,000
2045 <sup>(1)</sup>	28,785,000

---

<sup>(1)</sup> Stated maturity.

The Authority may credit against any annual amount subject to mandatory redemption, the principal amount of any New Money Bonds of the same maturity that have been defeased, purchased for cancellation or redeemed and not previously so credited.

See “—Notice of Redemption or Tender; Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed or Tendered” below for information on the manner of selection of the Series 2018 S Bonds to be redeemed.

## Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender of Tax-Exempt Bonds

The Tax-Exempt Bonds are not subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender prior to their stated maturity dates except for the Short Call Bonds and the Ten-Year Call Bonds described below.

### *Short Call Bonds*

The New Money Bonds having the following maturities, principal amounts, interest rates and yields are Short Call Bonds (the “Short Call Bonds”):

<u>Due July 15,</u>	<u>Principal Amount</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Yield</u>
2022	\$7,600,000	5%	1.84%
2023	7,910,000	5	1.92
2024	8,320,000	5	1.94
2025	8,780,000	5	2.00
2026	8,625,000	5	2.10
2027	12,005,000	5	2.19
2028	12,605,000	5	2.23
2029	13,235,000	5	2.27
2030	13,895,000	5	2.30

The Short Call Bonds are subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender, in each case, at the option of the Authority prior to their stated maturity dates, in whole or in part, on any date on or after July 15, 2021, upon 30 days' notice, at a price of 100% of their principal amount plus accrued interest to such redemption or tender date.

In the event that the Short Call Bonds are defeased to their maturity dates, the Authority expects that such Short Call Bonds will remain subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender by the Authority.

See “—Notice of Redemption or Tender; Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed or Tendered” below for information on the manner of selection of the Short Call Bonds to be redeemed as described under this subheading.

#### *Ten-Year Call Bonds*

The New Money Bonds and the Subseries S-4A Bonds having the following maturities, principal amounts, interest rates and yields are Ten-Year Call Bonds (the “Ten-Year Call Bonds”):

#### **New Money Bonds**

<b>Due July 15,</b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Yield</b>
2031	\$14,590,000	5%	2.98%
2032	15,320,000	5	3.02
2033	16,085,000	5	3.08
2034	16,890,000	5	3.13
2035	17,735,000	5¼	3.10
2036	18,665,000	5¼	3.12
2037	19,645,000	5	3.23
2038	20,625,000	5	3.25
2039	21,660,000	4	3.61
2046	30,330,000	4	3.72
2047	29,680,000	3¾	3.75

\$97,085,000 5% Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Term Bonds due July 15, 2043—Yield 3.32%

\$56,165,000 5¼% Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Term Bonds due July 15, 2045—Yield 3.24%

#### **Subseries S-4A Bonds**

<b>Due July 15,</b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Yield</b>
2029	\$29,820,000	5%	2.85%
2030	31,355,000	5	2.93
2031	32,955,000	5	2.98
2032	34,650,000	5	3.02
2033	9,175,000	3¼	3.35
2033	27,170,000	5	3.08
2034	38,125,000	5	3.13
2035	40,135,000	5¼	3.10
2036	4,400,000	5	3.20
2036	37,865,000	5¼	3.12
2037	15,000,000	4	3.58
2037	29,425,000	5	3.23

The Ten-Year Call Bonds are subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender, in each case, at the option of the Authority prior to their stated maturity dates, in whole or in part, on any date on or after July 15, 2028, upon 30 days' notice, at a price of 100% of their principal amount plus accrued interest to such redemption or tender date.

In the event that the Ten-Year Call Bonds are defeased to their maturity dates, the Authority expects that such Ten-Year Call Bonds will remain subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender by the Authority.

See “—Notice of Redemption or Tender; Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed or Tendered” below for information on the manner of selection of the Ten-Year Call Bonds to be redeemed as described under this subheading.

## **Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender of Taxable Bonds**

### *Make-Whole Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender*

The Taxable Bonds are subject to redemption or mandatory tender prior to their stated maturity dates at the option of the Authority, in whole or in part on any date, at a make-whole price equal to the greater of:

- (1) the principal amount of such Taxable Bonds to be redeemed or tendered; or
- (2) the sum of the present value of the remaining scheduled payments of principal and interest to the maturity date of such Taxable Bonds to be redeemed or tendered, not including any portion of those payments of interest accrued and unpaid as of the date on which such Taxable Bonds are to be redeemed or tendered, discounted to the date on which such Taxable Bonds are to be redeemed or tendered on a semi-annual basis, assuming a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months, at the Treasury Rate (described below) plus 10 basis points;

plus, in each case, accrued interest on such Taxable Bonds to be redeemed or tendered to the redemption or tender date.

“Treasury Rate” means, with respect to any redemption or tender date for a particular Taxable Bonds the yield to maturity as of such redemption or tender date of United States Treasury securities with a constant maturity (as compiled and published in the Federal Reserve Statistical Release H.15 (519) that has become publicly available at least two Business Days, but not more than 45 calendar days, prior to the redemption or tender date (excluding inflation indexed securities) (or, if such Statistical Release is no longer published, any publicly available source of similar market data)) most nearly equal to the period from the redemption or tender date to the maturity date of the Taxable Bond to be redeemed or tendered.

In the event that the Taxable Bonds are defeased to their maturity dates, the Authority expects that such Taxable Bonds will remain subject to optional redemption or mandatory tender by the Authority.

See “—Notice of Redemption or Tender; Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed or Tendered” below for information on the manner of selection of the Taxable Bonds to be redeemed or tendered as described under this subheading “Optional Redemption or Mandatory Tender of Taxable Bonds.”

### **Multi-Modal Bonds in the Fixed Rate Mode**

The Series 2018 S Bonds are being issued as multi-modal bonds in the fixed rate mode. The Authority may cause a mandatory tender of such Bonds at the optional redemption price on any date such Series 2018 S Bonds are subject to optional redemption, subject to the Authority’s providing a source of payment therefor in accordance with the Indenture and the Act. If notice of mandatory tender has been given and funds prove insufficient, the Series 2018 S Bonds not purchased shall continue in the fixed rate mode, without change in interest rate, maturity date or other terms. Other modes to which such Bonds may be converted are not described in this Official Statement.

See “—Notice of Redemption or Tender; Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed or Tendered” below for information on the manner of selection of the Series 2018 S Bonds to be redeemed.

### **Notice of Redemption or Tender; Selection of Bonds to be Redeemed or Tendered**

On or after any redemption date, interest will cease to accrue on the Series 2018 S Bonds called for redemption. On or after any successful tender date, interest will cease to accrue on the Series 2018 S Bonds successfully tendered.

The particular series and subseries, if applicable, maturities, amounts and interest rates of the Series 2018 S Bonds to be redeemed or called for mandatory tender at the option of the Authority will be determined by the Authority in its sole discretion.



Upon receipt of notice from the Authority of its election to redeem or call for mandatory tender the Series 2018 S Bonds, the Trustee is to give notice of such redemption or tender by mail to the Holders of the Series 2018 S Bonds to be redeemed or tendered, as applicable, not less than 30 days or more than 60 days prior to the date set for redemption or tender. Failure by a particular holder to receive notice, or any defect in the notice to such holder, will not affect the redemption or purchase of any other Bond.

If less than all of the Series 2018 S Bonds of a series and subseries, if applicable, and maturity, amount and interest rate are called for prior redemption or tender, such Series 2018 S Bonds will be selected for redemption or tender, as applicable, in accordance with DTC procedures, by lot.

### **Defeasance**

The Series 2018 S Bonds are subject to legal defeasance in accordance with the Indenture. As a condition to legal defeasance of any of the Bonds, the Authority must obtain an opinion of counsel to the effect that the owners thereof will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such legal defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such legal defeasance had not occurred. See “APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT—The Indenture—*Defeasance*.”

### **Other Series**

The Authority may from time to time request the authentication and delivery of an additional Series of Building Aid Revenue Bonds. See “SECTION II: SOURCES OF PAYMENT AND SECURITY FOR THE BUILDING AID REVENUE BONDS—Additional Building Aid Revenue Bonds.”

## Debt Service Requirements

The following schedule sets forth, for each 12-month period ending June 30 of the years shown, the amounts required to be paid by the Authority for the payment of debt service on the Series 2018 S Bonds, on all Outstanding Building Aid Revenue Bonds and total debt service on Building Aid Revenue Bonds during such period.

Fiscal Year	Debt Service on Outstanding Building Aid Revenue Bonds <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup>	Series 2018 S Bonds Debt Service			Total Debt Service on Building Aid Revenue Bonds <sup>(1)(2)(4)</sup>
		Principal and Sinking Fund Installments	Interest	Total	
2019	\$452,605,940	\$17,865,000	\$41,093,446	\$58,958,446	\$511,564,387
2020	472,081,368	25,145,000	49,993,497	75,138,497	547,219,865
2021	471,936,253	25,835,000	49,241,572	75,076,572	547,012,825
2022	474,079,099	26,660,000	48,393,837	75,053,837	549,132,936
2023	540,343,260	30,565,000	47,296,604	77,861,604	618,204,864
2024	539,873,310	31,995,000	45,844,050	77,839,050	617,712,360
2025	539,885,655	33,610,000	44,219,500	77,829,500	617,715,155
2026	539,749,539	35,300,000	42,507,100	77,807,100	617,556,639
2027	537,178,314	37,095,000	40,697,225	77,792,225	614,970,539
2028	537,860,975	38,990,000	38,795,100	77,785,100	615,646,075
2029	538,189,349	40,970,000	36,796,100	77,766,100	615,955,449
2030	538,080,995	43,055,000	34,695,475	77,750,475	615,831,470
2031	535,395,057	45,250,000	32,487,850	77,737,850	613,132,907
2032	536,908,311	47,545,000	30,167,975	77,712,975	614,621,286
2033	535,073,811	49,970,000	27,730,100	77,700,100	612,773,911
2034	535,554,063	52,430,000	25,250,381	77,680,381	613,234,444
2035	535,211,827	55,015,000	22,644,538	77,659,538	612,871,365
2036	534,899,632	57,870,000	19,750,075	77,620,075	612,519,707
2037	493,802,201	60,930,000	16,637,075	77,567,075	571,369,276
2038	411,134,282	64,070,000	13,516,413	77,586,413	488,720,695
2039	365,763,697	20,625,000	11,474,038	32,099,038	397,862,735
2040	213,548,242	21,660,000	10,525,213	32,185,213	245,733,455
2041	213,428,189	22,525,000	9,528,888	32,053,888	245,482,077
2042	173,232,250	23,650,000	8,374,513	32,024,513	205,256,763
2043	150,055,725	24,835,000	7,162,388	31,997,388	182,053,113
2044	115,358,675	26,075,000	5,889,638	31,964,638	147,323,313
2045	70,937,200	27,380,000	4,519,038	31,899,038	102,836,238
2046	19,670,700	28,785,000	3,044,706	31,829,706	51,500,406
2047	-	30,330,000	1,682,500	32,012,500	32,012,500
2048	-	29,680,000	537,950	30,217,950	30,217,950

<sup>(1)</sup> Figures do not reflect the federal subsidy on Build America Bonds and Qualified School Construction Bonds.

<sup>(2)</sup> Figures reflect sinking fund requirements deposited for payment of the principal of Qualified School Construction Bonds.

<sup>(3)</sup> Excludes amounts required to be paid by the Authority for the payment of debt service on the Refunded Bonds.

<sup>(4)</sup> Totals may not add due to rounding.

## **Use of Proceeds**

The proceeds of the New Money Bonds will be used to pay a portion of the costs of one or more of the Five-Year Plans approved in accordance with Section 2590-p of Education Law. The proceeds of the Refunding Bonds, together with other funds of the Authority, will be used to redeem, at or prior to maturity, the Building Aid Revenue Bonds identified in “APPENDIX D” hereto (the “Refunded Bonds”) by providing for the payment of principal and interest and redemption premium, if any, on the Refunded Bonds to the extent and to the payment dates shown in “APPENDIX D”. The delivery of the New Money Bonds is not contingent upon the delivery of the Refunding Bonds. The delivery of the Refunding Bonds is not contingent upon the delivery of the New Money Bonds. The delivery of the Subseries S-4A Bonds is contingent upon the delivery of the Subseries S-4B Bonds. The delivery of the Subseries S-4B Bonds is contingent on the delivery of the Subseries S-4A Bonds. The refunding of the Refunded Bonds is contingent upon the delivery of the Refunding Bonds. The Refunded Bonds were issued to finance the costs of one or more of the Five-Year Plans approved in accordance with Section 2590-p of the Education Law.

Certain expenses of the Authority incurred in connection with the issuance and sale of the Series 2018 S Bonds will be paid from the proceeds of the Series 2018 S Bonds.

## **Book-Entry Only System**

Beneficial ownership interests in the Authority’s bonds and notes (the “Securities”) will be available in book-entry only form. Purchasers of beneficial ownership interests in the Securities will not receive certificates representing their interests in the Securities purchased.

DTC, New York, New York, will act as securities depository for the Securities. References to the Securities under the caption “Book-Entry Only System” shall mean all Series 2018 S Bonds held in the United States through DTC. The Securities will be issued as fully registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC’s partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Security certificate will be issued for each principal amount of Securities of each series and subseries, if applicable, maturing on a specific date and bearing interest at a specific interest rate, each in the aggregate principal amount of such quantity of Security, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world’s largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a “banking organization” within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a “clearing corporation” within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a “clearing agency” registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC’s participants (“Direct Participants”) deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants’ accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation (“DTCC”). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly (“Indirect Participants”). DTC has a S&P rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of the Securities under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Securities on DTC’s records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Securities (“Beneficial Owner”) is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants’ records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their

holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Securities are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in the Securities, except in the event that use of the book-entry system for the Securities is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Securities deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of the Securities with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Securities; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts the Securities are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Securities within an issue are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such issue to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to the Securities unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's MMI Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the Authority as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts the Securities are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Principal and interest payments on the Securities will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the Authority or the Trustee on the payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participants and not of DTC, the Trustee, or the Authority, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payment of principal and interest to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) is the responsibility of the Authority or the Trustee, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its service as depository with respect to the Securities at any time by giving reasonable notice to the Authority or the Trustee. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, Security certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The Authority may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, Security certificates will be printed and delivered to DTC.

Unless otherwise noted, the information contained in the preceding paragraphs of this subsection "Book-Entry Only System" has been extracted from information furnished by DTC. None of the Authority or the Underwriters makes any representation as to the completeness or the accuracy of such information or as to the absence of material adverse changes in such information subsequent to the date hereof.

**THE AUTHORITY AND THE TRUSTEE CANNOT AND DO NOT GIVE ANY ASSURANCES THAT DTC, DIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS WILL DISTRIBUTE TO THE BENEFICIAL OWNERS OF THE SECURITIES: (1) PAYMENTS OF PRINCIPAL OF OR INTEREST OR REDEMPTION**

PREMIUM ON THE SECURITIES; (2) CONFIRMATIONS OF THEIR OWNERSHIP INTERESTS IN THE SECURITIES; OR (3) OTHER NOTICES SENT TO DTC OR CEDE & CO., ITS PARTNERSHIP NOMINEE, AS THE REGISTERED OWNER OF THE SECURITIES, OR THAT THEY WILL DO SO ON A TIMELY BASIS, OR THAT DTC, DIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS WILL SERVE AND ACT IN THE MANNER DESCRIBED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT.

THE AUTHORITY AND THE TRUSTEE WILL NOT HAVE ANY RESPONSIBILITY OR OBLIGATIONS TO DTC, DIRECT PARTICIPANTS, INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR THE BENEFICIAL OWNERS WITH RESPECT TO (1) THE ACCURACY OF ANY RECORDS MAINTAINED BY DTC OR ANY DIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS; (2) THE PAYMENT BY DTC OR ANY DIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS OF ANY AMOUNT DUE TO ANY BENEFICIAL OWNER IN RESPECT OF THE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF OR INTEREST OR REDEMPTION PREMIUM ON THE SECURITIES; (3) THE DELIVERY BY DTC OR ANY DIRECT PARTICIPANTS OR INDIRECT PARTICIPANTS OF ANY NOTICE TO ANY BENEFICIAL OWNER THAT IS REQUIRED OR PERMITTED TO BE GIVEN TO OWNERS UNDER THE TERMS OF THE INDENTURE; OR (4) ANY CONSENT GIVEN OR OTHER ACTION TAKEN BY DTC AS THE REGISTERED HOLDER OF THE SECURITIES.

THE INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN CONCERNING DTC AND ITS BOOK-ENTRY SYSTEMS HAS BEEN OBTAINED FROM DTC AND NONE OF THE AUTHORITY, THE UNDERWRITERS OR THE INITIAL PURCHASERS MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION AS TO THE COMPLETENESS OR THE ACCURACY OF SUCH INFORMATION OR AS TO THE ABSENCE OF MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGES IN SUCH INFORMATION SUBSEQUENT TO THE DATE HEREOF.

#### **Other Information**

For additional information regarding the Series 2018 S Bonds and the Indenture, see “APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT.”

### **SECTION IV: THE AUTHORITY**

#### **Purpose and Operations**

The Authority is a corporate governmental agency constituting a public benefit corporation and an instrumentality of the State created to issue and sell its Bonds and Notes to fund a portion of the capital program of the City including the Five-Year Plan, as requested by the Mayor.

The Authority does not have any significant assets or sources of funds other than the Tax Revenues and State Building Aid and amounts on deposit pursuant to the Indenture. The Authority has no source of payment for the Building Aid Revenue Bonds other than State Building Aid. The Bonds will not be insured or guaranteed by the City or the State. Consequently, holders of the Bonds must rely for repayment solely upon the sources of payment described herein.

The Authority also derives Revenues from federal subsidies with respect to Build America Bonds and Qualified School Construction Bonds under the Recovery Act, but such Revenues are not pledged to the Holders of the Series 2018 S Bonds. For a description of the application of such federal subsidies under the Indenture, see “APPENDIX A—SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT.”

The Authority is not authorized by State law to file a petition in bankruptcy.

## Directors and Management

The Authority is administered by five directors, consisting of the Director of Management and Budget of the City, the Comptroller of the City, the Speaker of the City Council, the Commissioner of Finance of the City and the Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction of the City. Three directors constitute a quorum for the transaction of business or the exercise of any power of the Authority. A favorable vote of at least three directors present at a meeting where such action is taken is necessary to approve any action, including the issuance of Bonds or Notes of the Authority or to authorize any amendatory or supplemental indenture or financing agreement of the Authority relating to such issuance. The current directors of the Authority, each of whom serves in an ex-officio capacity, are:

Melanie Hartzog, Chairperson	— Director of Management and Budget of the City
Jacques Jiha	— Commissioner of Finance of the City
Scott M. Stringer	— Comptroller of the City
Ana Barrio	— Acting Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction of the City
Corey Johnson	— Speaker of the City Council

The following is a brief description of certain officers and staff members of the Authority:

### *Alan L. Anders, Executive Director*

Mr. Anders was appointed Treasurer in April 1997 and subsequently was appointed Executive Director in June 2006. Mr. Anders also serves as Deputy Director for Finance of the Office of Management and Budget of the City. Prior to joining the City in September 1990, Mr. Anders was a senior investment banker for J.P. Morgan Securities since 1977 and prior to that date was Executive Director of the Commission on Governmental Efficiency and Economy in Baltimore, Maryland. Mr. Anders is a graduate of the University of Pennsylvania and the University of Maryland Law School

### *Prescott D. Ulrey, Secretary*

Mr. Ulrey was appointed Assistant Secretary in 1998, and subsequently was appointed General Counsel in 2000 and Secretary in 2013. He is a graduate of the University of California at Berkeley, the Fletcher School of Law and Diplomacy at Tufts University and Columbia Law School. He also serves as General Counsel at the Office of Management and Budget of the City.

### *F. Jay Olson, Treasurer*

Mr. Olson was appointed Assistant Treasurer in 2000, and subsequently was appointed Treasurer in 2006. He is a graduate of Northwestern University, the University of Texas at Austin, and the John F. Kennedy School of Government at Harvard University. He also serves as Assistant Director at the Office of Management and Budget of the City.

### *Robert L. Balducci, Comptroller*

Mr. Balducci was appointed Assistant Comptroller in 2009, and subsequently was appointed Deputy Comptroller in 2011 and Comptroller in 2014. He is a graduate of Baruch College of the City University of New York.

### *Kemraj Narine, Deputy Comptroller*

Mr. Narine was appointed Assistant Comptroller in 2011, and subsequently was appointed Deputy Comptroller in 2014. He is a graduate of York College of the City University of New York.

*Al Rodriguez, Assistant Secretary*

Mr. Rodriguez was appointed Assistant Secretary in 2013. He is a graduate of the University of New Mexico and Columbia Law School. He also serves as Chief of the Municipal Finance Division of the New York City Law Department.

*Jeffrey M. Werner, Assistant Secretary*

Mr. Werner was appointed Assistant Secretary in 2013. He is a graduate of Bowdoin College and Columbia Law School. He also serves as Deputy General Counsel at the Office of Management and Budget of the City.

*Laura A. Tarbox, Assistant Treasurer*

Ms. Tarbox was appointed Assistant Treasurer in 2014. She is a graduate of Cornell University. She also serves as Deputy Assistant Director at the Office of Management and Budget of the City.

*Nameca Sharma, Accounting Manager*

Ms. Sharma was appointed Accounting Manager in 2015. She is a graduate of York College of the City University of New York.

### **Other Authority Obligations**

The School Financing Act authorizes the issuance of Building Aid Revenue Bonds of the Authority in an amount outstanding of up to \$9.4 billion to finance portions of the Five Year Plan. Building Aid Revenue Bonds are secured by State Building Aid assigned by the City to the Authority. In addition, assuming conditions specified in the Act and the Indenture are met, the Enabling Act currently permits the Authority to have outstanding \$13.5 billion of Future Tax Secured Bonds and to issue additional Future Tax Secured Bonds provided that the amount of such additional bonds outstanding, together with the amount of indebtedness contracted by the City, does not exceed the debt limit of the City. In addition, the Enabling Act permits the Authority to have outstanding up to \$2.5 billion of Future Tax Secured Bonds to pay costs related to or arising from the September 11 attack on the World Trade Center.

The Authority has Outstanding \$833,490,000 of Future Tax Secured Bonds issued as Pre-07 S-1 Obligations, \$33,383,910,000 of Future Tax Secured Bonds issued as Post-07 S-1 Obligations and \$7,514,705,000 Building Aid Revenue Bonds (not including the Series 2018 S Bonds). All outstanding Building Aid Revenue Bonds are fixed rate bonds.

### **SECTION V: LITIGATION**

There is not now pending any litigation (i) restraining or enjoining the issuance or delivery of the Series 2018 S Bonds or questioning or affecting the validity of the Series 2018 S Bonds or the proceedings and authority under which they are issued; (ii) contesting the creation, organization or existence of the Authority, or the title of the directors or officers of the Authority to their respective offices; (iii) questioning the right of the Authority to enter into the Indenture, the Assignment or the Agreement and to pledge the State Building Aid and funds and other moneys and securities purported to be pledged by the Indenture in the manner and to the extent provided in the Indenture and State Building Aid or (iv) questioning or affecting the levy or collection of the Personal Income Tax, Sales Tax and State Building Aid in any material respect, or the application of the Personal Income Tax, Sales Tax and State Building Aid for the purposes contemplated by the Act, or the procedure thereunder.

## SECTION VI: TAX MATTERS

### Series 2018 S Bonds – New York Personal Income Tax Exemption

In the opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, New York, New York, as Bond Counsel, interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds will be exempt from personal income taxes imposed by the State or any political subdivision thereof, including the City.

### Tax-Exempt Bonds

The Authority and the City will covenant in Tax Certificates to comply with certain provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), relating to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds for purposes of federal income taxation. In the opinion of Bond Counsel, assuming compliance by the Authority and the City with such covenants, interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for purposes of federal income taxation. Failure by the Authority or the City to comply with such covenants may cause interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof retroactive to the date of issue of the Tax-Exempt Bonds. Further, Bond Counsel will render no opinion as to the effect on the exclusion from gross income of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds of any action (including without limitation a change in the interest rate mode with respect to the Tax-Exempt Bonds) taken or not taken after the date of such opinion without the approval of Bond Counsel.

In the opinion of Bond Counsel, interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal individual or corporate alternative minimum tax. The Code contains other provisions that could result in tax consequences, upon which no opinion will be rendered by Bond Counsel, as a result of ownership of the Tax-Exempt Bonds or the inclusion in certain computations (including, without limitation, those related to the corporate alternative minimum tax) of interest that is excluded from gross income. For taxable years that began on or before December 31, 2017, interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds owned by certain corporations will be included in such corporations’ adjusted current earnings for purposes of computing the alternative minimum tax on such corporations. The alternative minimum tax on corporations has been repealed for taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 2018.

Bond Counsel’s opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the covenants of the Authority and the City described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the “IRS” or the “Service”) with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Bond Counsel, and Bond Counsel’s opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on tax-exempt obligations. If an audit of the Tax-Exempt Bonds is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the Authority as the “taxpayer,” and the owners of the Tax-Exempt Bonds would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds, the Authority may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Tax-Exempt Bonds. Public awareness of any future audit of the Tax-Exempt Bonds could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Tax-Exempt Bonds during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel will express no opinion with respect to any federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Tax-Exempt Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Tax-Exempt Bonds should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Tax-Exempt Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust (FASIT), and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.



Existing law may change so as to reduce or eliminate the benefit to holders of the Tax-Exempt Bonds of the exclusion of interest thereon from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Proposed legislative or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value and marketability of the Tax-Exempt Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Tax-Exempt Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed changes in tax law.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount or Premium on Certain Tax-Exempt Bonds**

The initial public offering price of certain Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “Discount Bonds”) may be less than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity. An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount Bond. A portion of such original issue discount allocable to the holding period of such Discount Bond by the initial purchaser will, upon the disposition of such Discount Bond (including by reason of its payment at maturity), be treated as interest excludable from gross income, rather than as taxable gain, for federal income tax purposes, on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds described above. Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Bond, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Bond and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during the tax year.

However, such interest may be required to be taken into account in determining the alternative minimum taxable income of a corporation for taxable years that began on or before December 31, 2017, for purposes of calculating a corporation’s alternative minimum tax imposed by Section 55 of the Code, and the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, owners of an interest in a FASIT, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Moreover, in the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Bond by the initial owner prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Bond was held) is includable in gross income. Owners of Discount Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of accrued original issue discount on Discount Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Discount Bonds.

The purchase price of certain Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “Premium Bonds”) paid by an owner may be greater than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity. An amount equal to the excess of a purchaser’s tax basis in a Premium Bond over the amount payable at maturity constitutes premium to such purchaser. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Bond in the hands of such purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable bond premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable bond premium. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Bond. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by a purchaser is determined by using such purchaser’s yield to maturity. Purchasers of the Premium Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable bond premium on Premium Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Bonds.

### **Taxable Bonds**

*General.* The following is a general summary of certain federal income tax consequences of the purchase and ownership of the Taxable Bonds. The discussion is based upon the Code, U.S. Treasury Regulations, rulings, and decisions now in effect, all of which are subject to change (possibly, with retroactive effect) or possibly

differing interpretation. No assurances can be given that future changes in the law will not alter the conclusions reached herein. The discussion below does not purport to deal with federal income tax consequences applicable to all categories of investors and generally does not address consequences relating to the disposition of a Taxable Bond by a Beneficial Owner thereof. Further, this summary does not discuss all aspects of federal income taxation that may be relevant to a particular investor in the Taxable Bonds in light of the investor's particular circumstances (for example, persons subject to the alternative minimum tax provisions of the Code), or to certain types of investors subject to special treatment under the federal income tax laws (including insurance companies, tax-exempt organizations and entities, financial institutions, broker-dealers, persons who have hedged the risk of owning the Taxable Bonds, traders in securities that elect to use a mark-to-market method of accounting, thrifts, regulated investment companies, pension and other employee benefit plans, partnerships and other pass-through entities, certain hybrid entities and owners of interests therein, persons who acquire Taxable Bonds in connection with the performance of services, or persons deemed to sell Taxable Bonds under the constructive sale provisions of the Code). The discussion below also does not discuss any aspect of state, local, or foreign law or U.S. federal tax laws other than U.S. federal income tax law. The summary is limited to certain issues relating to initial investors who will hold the Taxable Bonds as "capital assets" within the meaning of Section 1221 of the Code, and acquire such Taxable Bonds for investment and not as a dealer or for resale. This summary addresses certain federal income tax consequences applicable to Beneficial Owners of the Taxable Bonds who are United States persons within the meaning of Section 7701(a)(30) of the Code ("United States persons") and, except as discussed below, does not address any consequences to persons other than United States persons. Prospective investors should note that no rulings have been or will be sought from the Internal Revenue Service with respect to any of the federal income tax consequences discussed below, and no assurance can be given that the Service will not take contrary positions.

ALL PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS IN DETERMINING THE FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL, FOREIGN, AND ANY OTHER TAX CONSEQUENCES TO THEM FROM THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP, AND DISPOSITION OF THE TAXABLE BONDS.

*Stated Interest and Reporting of Interest Payments.* The stated interest on the Taxable Bonds will be included in the gross income, as defined in Section 61 of the Code, of the Beneficial Owners thereof as ordinary income for federal income tax purposes at the time it is paid or accrued, depending on the tax accounting method applicable to the Beneficial Owners thereof. Subject to certain exceptions, the stated interest on the Taxable Bonds will be reported to the Service. Such information will be filed each year with the Service on Form 1099 which will reflect the name, address, and taxpayer identification number ("TIN") of the Beneficial Owner. A copy of Form 1099 will be sent to each Beneficial Owner of a Taxable Bond for federal income tax purposes.

*Medicare Contribution Tax.* Pursuant to Section 1411 of the Code, as enacted by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, an additional tax is imposed on individuals beginning January 1, 2013. The additional tax is 3.8% of the lesser of (i) net investment income (defined as gross income from interest, dividends, net gain from disposition of property not used in a trade or business, and certain other listed items of gross income), or (ii) the excess of "modified adjusted gross income" of the individual over \$200,000 for unmarried individuals (\$250,000 for married couples filing a joint return and a surviving spouse). Beneficial Owners of the Taxable Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors concerning this additional tax, as it may apply to interest earned on the Taxable Bonds as well as gain on the sale of a Taxable Bond.

*Backup Withholding.* Under Section 3406 of the Code, a Beneficial Owner of the Taxable Bonds who is a United States person may, under certain circumstances, be subject to "backup withholding" (currently at a rate of 28 percent) on current or accrued interest on the Taxable Bonds or with respect to proceeds received from a disposition of the Taxable Bonds. This withholding applies if such Beneficial Owner of Taxable Bonds: (i) fails to furnish to the payor such Beneficial Owner's social security number or other TIN; (ii) furnishes the payor an incorrect TIN; (iii) fails to report interest properly; or (iv) under certain circumstances, fails to provide the payor or such Beneficial Owner's broker with a certified statement, signed under penalty of perjury, that the TIN provided to the payor or broker is correct and that such Beneficial Owner is not subject to backup withholding. To establish status as an exempt person, a Beneficial Owner will generally be required to provide certification on IRS Form W-9 (or substitute form).

Backup withholding will not apply, however, if the Beneficial Owner is a corporation or falls within certain tax-exempt categories and, when required, demonstrates such fact. BENEFICIAL OWNERS OF THE TAXABLE

BONDS SHOULD CONSULT THEIR TAX ADVISORS REGARDING THEIR QUALIFICATION FOR EXEMPTION FROM BACKUP WITHHOLDING AND THE PROCEDURE FOR OBTAINING SUCH EXEMPTION, IF APPLICABLE. The backup withholding tax is not an additional tax and taxpayers may use amounts withheld as a credit against their federal income tax liability or may claim a refund as long as they timely provide certain information to the Service.

*Withholding on Payments to Nonresident Alien Individuals and Foreign Corporations.* Under Sections 1441 and 1442 of the Code, nonresident alien individuals and foreign corporations are generally subject to withholding of U.S. federal income tax by the payor at the rate of 30 percent on periodic income items arising from sources within the United States, provided such income is not effectively connected with the conduct of a United States trade or business. Assuming the interest income of such a Beneficial Owner of the Taxable Bonds is not treated as effectively connected income within the meaning of Section 864 of the Code, such interest will be subject to 30 percent withholding, or any lower rate specified in an income tax treaty, unless such income is treated as “portfolio interest.” Interest will be treated as portfolio interest if (i) the Beneficial Owner provides a statement to the payor certifying, under penalties of perjury, that such Beneficial Owner is not a United States person and providing the name and address of such Beneficial Owner, (ii) such interest is treated as not effectively connected with the Beneficial Owner’s United States trade or business, (iii) interest payments are not made to a person within a foreign country which the Service has included on a list of countries having provisions inadequate to prevent United States tax evasion, (iv) interest payable with respect to the Taxable Bonds is not deemed contingent interest within the meaning of the portfolio debt provision, (v) such Beneficial Owner is not a controlled foreign corporation within the meaning of Section 957 of the Code, and (vi) such Beneficial Owner is not a bank receiving interest on the Taxable Bonds pursuant to a loan agreement entered into in the ordinary course of the bank’s trade or business.

Assuming payments on the Taxable Bonds are treated as portfolio interest within the meaning of Sections 871 and 881 of the Code, then no withholding under Section 1441 and 1442 of the Code, and no backup withholding under Section 3406 of the Code is required with respect to Beneficial Owners or intermediaries who have furnished Form W-8 BEN, Form W-8 BEN-E, Form W-8 EXP, or Form W-8 IMY, as applicable, provided the payor has no actual knowledge or reason to know that such person is a United States person.

*Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act.* Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code impose a 30% withholding tax on certain types of payments made to a foreign financial institution, unless the foreign financial institution enters into an agreement with the U.S. Treasury to, among other things, undertake to identify accounts held by certain U.S. persons or U.S.-owned entities, annually report certain information about such accounts, and withhold 30% on payments to account holders whose actions prevent it from complying with these and other reporting requirements, or unless the foreign financial institution is otherwise exempt from those requirements. In addition, the Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (“FATCA”) imposes a 30% withholding tax on the same types of payments to a non-financial foreign entity unless the entity certifies that it does not have any substantial U.S. owners or the entity furnishes identifying information regarding each substantial U.S. owner. Failure to comply with the additional certification, information reporting and other specified requirements imposed under FATCA could result in the 30% withholding tax being imposed on payments of interest and principal under the Taxable Bonds and sales proceeds of Taxable Bonds held by or through a foreign entity. In general, withholding under FATCA currently applies to payments of U.S. source interest (including original issue discount) and will apply to (i) gross proceeds from the sale, exchange or retirement of debt obligations paid after December 31, 2018 and (ii) certain “pass-thru” payments no earlier than January 1, 2019. Prospective investors should consult their own tax advisors regarding FATCA and its effect on them.

*The preceding discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax consequences is for general information only and is not tax advice. Accordingly, each investor should consult its own tax advisor as to particular tax consequences to it of purchasing, owning, and disposing of the Taxable Bonds, including the applicability and effect of any state, local, or foreign tax laws, and of any proposed changes in applicable laws.*

## **ERISA Considerations**

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (“ERISA”), and the Code generally prohibit certain transactions between employee benefit plans under ERISA or tax qualified retirement plans and individual retirement accounts under the Code (collectively, the “Plans”) and persons who, with respect to a Plan,

are fiduciaries or other “parties in interest” within the meaning of ERISA or “disqualified persons” within the meaning of the Code. In addition, each fiduciary of a Plan (“Plan Fiduciary”) must give appropriate consideration to the facts and circumstances that are relevant to an investment in the Series 2018 S Bonds, including the role that such an investment in the Series 2018 S Bonds would play in the Plan’s overall investment portfolio. Each Plan Fiduciary, before deciding to invest in the Series 2018 S Bonds, must be satisfied that such investment in the Series 2018 S Bonds is a prudent investment for the Plan, that the investments of the Plan, including the investment in the Series 2018 S Bonds, are diversified so as to minimize the risk of large losses and that an investment in the Series 2018 S Bonds complies with the documents of the Plan and related trust, to the extent that such documents are consistent with ERISA. All Plan Fiduciaries, in consultation with their advisors, should carefully consider the impact of ERISA and the Code on an investment in any Series 2018 S Bond.

#### **SECTION VII: RATINGS**

The Series 2018 S Bonds are rated “AA” by S&P, “Aa2” by Moody’s and “AA” by Fitch. Such ratings reflect only the views of S&P, Moody’s and Fitch from which an explanation of the significance of such ratings may be obtained. There is no assurance that a particular rating will continue for any given period of time or that any such rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely if, in the judgment of the Rating Agency originally establishing the rating, circumstances so warrant. A revision or withdrawal of such ratings may have an effect on the market price of the Series 2018 S Bonds.

#### **SECTION VIII: APPROVAL OF LEGALITY**

All legal matters incident to the authorization, issuance and delivery of the Series 2018 S Bonds are subject to the approval of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, New York, New York, Bond Counsel to the Authority. Certain legal matters are subject to the approval of the New York City Corporation Counsel, counsel to the Authority and the City, and of Katten Muchin Rosenman LLP, New York, New York, counsel to the Underwriters and the Initial Purchasers.

#### **SECTION IX: FINANCIAL ADVISORS**

Public Resources Advisory Group, New York, New York, and Acacia Financial Group, Inc., New York, New York, are acting as financial advisors to the Authority in connection with the issuance of the Series 2018 S Bonds.

#### **SECTION X: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

The financial statements of the Authority as of and for the years ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 included in Appendix B to this Official Statement have been audited by Marks Paneth LLP, independent certified public accountants, as stated in their report appearing therein. Marks Paneth LLP, the Authority’s independent auditor has not reviewed, commented on or approved, and is not associated with, this Official Statement. The report of Marks Paneth LLP relating to the Authority’s financial statements for the fiscal years ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, which is a matter of public record, is included in this Official Statement. However, Marks Paneth LLP has not performed any procedures on any financial statements or other financial information of the Authority, including without limitation any of the information contained in this Official Statement, since the date of such report and has not been asked to consent to the inclusion of its report in this Official Statement.

#### **SECTION XI: CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING**

To the extent that Rule 15c2-12 (the “Rule”) of the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “1934 Act”), requires underwriters (as defined in the Rule), including the Initial Purchasers, to determine, as a condition to purchasing the securities, that the Authority will make such covenants, the Authority will covenant as follows:

The Authority shall provide:

(a) within 185 days after the end of each Fiscal Year, to the Electronic Municipal Market Access system (“EMMA”) (<http://emma.msrb.org>) established by the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the “MSRB”), core financial information and operating data for the prior fiscal year, including (i) the Authority’s audited financial statements, prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in effect from time to time, and (ii) material historical quantitative data on the Authority’s revenues, expenditures, financial operations and indebtedness, generally of the types found under “Section II” herein; and

(b) in a timely manner not in excess of 10 Business Days after the occurrence of the event, notice to EMMA of any of the following events with respect to the Series 2018 S Bonds:

- (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies;
- (2) non-payment related defaults, if material;
- (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties;
- (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties;
- (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform;
- (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB) or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Series 2018 S Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Series 2018 S Bonds;
- (7) modifications to rights of security holders, if material;
- (8) bond calls, if material, and tender offers;
- (9) defeasances;
- (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Series 2018 S Bonds, if material;
- (11) rating changes;
- (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or similar event of the Authority; which event is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer for the Authority in a proceeding under the U.S. Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Authority, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Authority;
- (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Authority or the sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Authority, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material;
- (14) appointment of a successor or additional trustee or the change of name of a trustee, if material; and

- (15) failure by the Authority to comply with clause (a) above.

The Authority will not undertake to provide any notice with respect to (1) credit enhancement if the credit enhancement is added after the primary offering of the Series 2018 S Bonds, the Authority does not apply for or participate in obtaining the enhancement and the enhancement is not described in the applicable Official Statement; (2) a mandatory scheduled redemption, not otherwise contingent upon the occurrence of an event, if (a) the terms, dates and amounts of redemption are set forth in detail in the applicable Official Statement, (b) the only open issue is which securities will be redeemed in the case of a partial redemption, (c) notice of redemption is given to the Holders as required under the terms of the Indenture and (d) public notice of the redemption is given pursuant to Release No. 23856 of the SEC under the 1934 Act, even if the originally scheduled amounts may be reduced by prior optional redemptions or purchases; or (3) tax exemption other than pursuant to the Act or Section 103 of the Code.

No Holder may institute any suit, action or proceeding at law or in equity (“Proceeding”) for the enforcement of the continuing disclosure undertaking (the “Undertaking”) or for any remedy for breach thereof, unless such Holder shall have filed with the Authority evidence of ownership and a written notice of and request to cure such breach, the Authority shall have refused to comply within a reasonable time and such Holder stipulates that (a) no challenge is made to the adequacy of any information provided in accordance with the Undertaking and (b) no remedy is sought other than substantial performance of the Undertaking. All Proceedings shall be instituted only as specified herein, in the federal or State courts located in the Borough of Manhattan, State and City of New York, and for the equal benefit of all holders of the outstanding bonds benefited by the same or a substantially similar covenant, and no remedy shall be sought or granted other than specific performance of the covenant at issue.

An amendment to the Undertaking may only take effect if:

(a) the amendment is made in connection with a change in circumstances that arises from a change in legal requirements, change in law, or change in the identity, nature, or status of the Authority, or type of business conducted; the Undertaking, as amended, would have complied with the requirements of the Rule at the time of award of a series of bonds, after taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule, as well as any change in circumstances; and the amendment does not materially impair the interests of Holders of bonds, as determined by parties unaffiliated with the Authority (such as, but without limitation, the Authority’s financial advisor or Bond Counsel) and the annual financial information containing (if applicable) the amended operating data or financial information will explain, in narrative form, the reasons for the amendment and the “impact” (as that word is used in the letter from the SEC staff to the National Association of Bond Lawyers dated June 23, 1995) of the change in the type of operating data or financial information being provided; or

(b) all or any part of the Rule, as interpreted by the staff of the SEC on the date of the Undertaking ceases to be in effect for any reason, and the Authority elects that the Undertaking shall be deemed terminated or amended (as the case may be) accordingly.

For purposes of the Undertaking, a beneficial owner of a bond includes any person who, directly or indirectly, through any contract, arrangement, understanding, relationship, or otherwise, has or shares investment power which includes the power to dispose, or to direct the disposition of, such bond, subject to certain exceptions as set forth in the Undertaking. Any assertion of beneficial ownership must be filed, with full documentary support, as part of the written request described above.

## **SECTION XII: UNDERWRITING**

The Tax-Exempt Bonds are being purchased for reoffering by the Underwriters, for whom Jefferies LLC is acting as Lead Manager.

The Underwriters have jointly and severally agreed, subject to certain conditions, to purchase Tax-Exempt Bonds from the Authority at an aggregate underwriters’ discount of \$4,638,254.90 and to make an initial public offering of the Tax-Exempt Bonds at prices that are not in excess of the initial public offering prices set forth on the inside cover pages of this Official Statement, plus accrued interest, if any. The Underwriters will be obligated to purchase all the Tax-Exempt Bonds if any Tax-Exempt Bonds are purchased.

The Taxable Bonds are being purchased by Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, the Initial Purchasers of such Bonds, pursuant to a Notice of Sale dated March 6, 2018, as supplemented, at a discount of \$80,580.50.

The Series 2018 S Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers (including the Underwriters and the Initial Purchasers) at prices lower than such public offering prices, and such public offering prices may be changed from time to time by the Underwriters and the Initial Purchasers.

Certain of the Underwriters and the Initial Purchasers have entered into distribution agreements with other broker-dealers (that have not been designated by the Authority as Underwriters or are not the Initial Purchasers) for the distribution of the Series 2018 S Bonds at the original issue prices. Such agreements generally provide that the relevant Underwriter or Initial Purchaser will share a portion of its underwriting compensation or selling concession with such broker-dealers.

The Underwriters, the Initial Purchasers and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. Certain of the Underwriters, the Initial Purchasers and their respective affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various investment banking services for the Authority for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the Underwriters, the Initial Purchasers and their respective affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (which may include bank loans and/or credit default swaps) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers and may at any time hold long and short positions in such securities and instruments. Such investment and securities activities may involve securities and instruments of the Authority.

### **SECTION XIII: VERIFICATION**

The accuracy of (i) the mathematical computations of the adequacy of the maturing principal of and interest earned on the government obligations to be held in escrow to provide for the payment of the principal of and interest and redemption premium, if any, on the bonds identified in “APPENDIX D” hereto and (ii) certain mathematical computations supporting the conclusion that the bonds are not “arbitrage bonds” under the Code will be verified by Samuel Klein and Company.

### **SECTION XIV: LEGAL INVESTMENT**

Pursuant to the Act, the Bonds and Notes of the Authority are securities in which all public officers and bodies of the State and all public corporations, municipalities and municipal subdivisions, all insurance companies and associations and other persons carrying on an insurance business, all banks, bankers, trust companies, savings banks and savings associations including savings and loan associations, building and loan associations, investment companies and other persons carrying on a banking business, all administrators, conservators, guardians, executors, trustees and other fiduciaries, and all other persons whatsoever who are now or may hereafter be authorized to invest in bonds or in other obligations of the State, may properly and legally invest funds, including capital, in their control or belonging to them. Pursuant to the Act, the Bonds and Notes may be deposited with and may be received by all public officers and bodies of the State and all municipalities and public corporations for any purpose for which the deposit of bonds or other obligations of the State is now or may hereafter be authorized.

### **SECTION XV: MISCELLANEOUS**

The references herein to the Act, the Indenture, the Assignment, the MOU and the Agreement are brief summaries of certain provisions thereof. Such summaries do not purport to be complete and reference is made to the Act, the Indenture, the Assignment, the MOU and the Agreement for full and complete statements of such provisions. Copies of the Act, the Indenture, the Assignment, the MOU and the Agreement are available at the offices of the Trustee.

The agreements of the Authority with holders of the Series 2018 S Bonds are fully set forth in the Indenture. Neither any advertisement of the Series 2018 S Bonds nor this Official Statement is to be construed as a contract with purchasers of the Series 2018 S Bonds.

The delivery of this Official Statement has been duly authorized by the Authority.

NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY



## SUMMARY OF INDENTURE AND AGREEMENT

This summary of the Indenture and the Agreement, each as proposed to be in effect upon the delivery of the Series 2018 S Bonds, is qualified in its entirety by reference to such documents, copies of which are available from the Authority.

**Definitions.** The following terms, among others, are defined in the Indenture, the Assignment or the Agreement:

**“Accounts”** means the School Bond Account, the Recovery and Parity Debt Account, the Collection Account, the Bond Account, the Redemption Account and such other Accounts as may be established and so designated pursuant to the Indenture.

**“Act”** means the New York City Transitional Finance Authority Act, as in effect from time to time, and as the context requires, other provisions of Chapter 16 of the laws of New York 1997, as amended, and the School Financing Act.

**“Agreement”** means the Financing Agreement dated October 1, 1997, between the Authority and the City, as amended, supplemented and in effect from time to time.

**“Alternative Revenues”** means (i) sales and compensating use taxes that the City is authorized by the State to impose and (ii) taxes imposed pursuant to §1107 of the Tax Law; and successor taxes.

The term **“ancillary contracts”** means contracts entered into pursuant to law by the Authority or for its benefit or the benefit of any of the Beneficiaries to facilitate the issuance, sale, resale, purchase, repurchase or payment of Bonds or Notes, including bond insurance, letters of credit and liquidity facilities.

**“Annual School Bond Debt Service”** means the total amount required to be paid from the School Bond Account in a Fiscal Year, based on School Bonds Outstanding and to be issued.

**“Assignment”** means the Assignment of State Aid dated October 19, 2006, as amended, and includes each further assignment of State aid by the City to the Authority pursuant to the School Financing Act.

**“Authorized Officer”** means: (i) in the case of the Authority, the Chairperson, the Executive Director, the General Counsel, the Treasurer (who shall be the chief fiscal officer for purposes of the School Financing Act), each Deputy Treasurer or Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary, each Deputy Secretary or Assistant Secretary, their successors in office, and any other person authorized to act under the Indenture by appropriate written notice to the Trustee, and (ii) in the case of the Trustee, any officer assigned to the corporate trust office, including any managing director, vice president, assistant vice president, assistant treasurer, assistant secretary or any other officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and having direct responsibility for the administration of the Indenture, and also, with respect to a particular matter, any other officer, to whom such matter is referred because of such officer’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

**“Beneficiaries”** means Bondholders and, to the extent specified in the Indenture, Noteholders and the parties to and beneficiaries of ancillary and swap contracts.

**“Bondholders,” “Holders,” “Noteholders”** and similar terms mean the registered owners of the Bonds and Notes from time to time as shown on the books of the Authority, and, to the extent specified by Series Resolution, the owners of bearer Bonds and Notes.

**“Bonds”** means all obligations issued by the Authority as bonds.

**“Build America Bonds”** or **“BABs”** means build America bonds under Section 54AA of the Tax Code.

**“Building Aid”** means the State school building aid described in the Assignment.

**“Building Aid Subaccount”** means the subaccount of the Collection Account so designated and held by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture.

**“Business Day”** means, subject to the Series Resolutions, a day (a) other than a day on which commercial banks in The City of New York, New York, are required or authorized by law or executive order to close and (b) on which neither the City nor the New York Stock Exchange is closed.

**“Capital Financing Need”** means a period during which and only the extent to which the issuance of Bonds or Notes in accordance with the Act would assist the City in meeting its capital needs as determined by the Mayor pursuant to the Act.

**“Chapter 297”** means Chapter 297 of the Laws of 2001 of the State, as it may be amended and in effect from time to time.

**“Collection Quarter”** means the three months beginning each August, November, February and May.

**“Competing Claims”** include all claims to, and diversions, reductions and withholdings of, Education Aid adverse to the Authority, such as: (x) claims of (i) holders of general obligation bonds of the City issued for school purposes; (ii) holders of certain State of New York Municipal Bond Bank Agency bonds; and (iii) holders of the New York City Educational Construction Fund Revenue bonds; and (y) State withholdings or recoveries of Education Aid for the City’s failure to provide certain educational services (e.g., courses in special areas, certain number of instructional days, certain health services, services for handicapped students, administrative practices or willful disobedience of certain laws or directives) or to otherwise correct errors or omissions in apportionments of Education Aid pursuant to Subdivision 5 of Section 3604 of the Education Law, as statutorily mandated.

**“Confirmed Building Aid”** means Building Aid statutorily required to be paid to the Authority with respect to approved projects, subject to appropriation, but not to any other statutory or administrative conditions or approvals, and which shall be calculated in accordance with the State Covenant and with the building aid ratios applicable to such projects at the date of calculation.

**“Counsel”** means nationally recognized bond counsel or such other counsel as may be selected by the Authority for a specific purpose.

**“Debt Service”** or **“Senior Debt Service”** means interest, redemption premium, purchase price to the extent provided by Officer’s Certificate, Sinking Fund Requirements and (without duplication) principal payments due on or on account of Outstanding Senior Bonds and (to the extent provided by Series Resolution) Notes and amounts payable from the Bond Account on Senior Agreements. Principal of Notes and termination payments on swap contracts shall be deemed Debt Service only to the extent expressly specified in the text of a Series Resolution.

**“Deductions”** refers to (i) the practice in effect at the date hereof under which, pursuant to the Education Law, the State Comptroller deducts from Education Aid amounts required to reimburse the State for certain expenditures made by the State for the education of blind, deaf and handicapped children resident in the City and (ii) withholdings, disallowances or recoveries of Education Aid as a result of administrative reviews, audits or other procedures relating to such Education Aid, other than administrative reviews, audits or other procedures relating to Building Aid.

**“Defeasance Collateral”** means money and (A) non-callable direct obligations of the United States of America, non-callable and non-prepayable direct federal agency obligations the timely payment of principal of and interest on which are fully and unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, non-callable direct obligations of the United States of America which have been stripped by the United States Treasury itself or by any Federal Reserve Bank (not including “CATS,” “TIGRS” and “TRS” unless the Authority obtains Rating Confirmation with respect thereto) and the interest components of REFCORP bonds for which the underlying bond is non-callable (or non-callable before the due date of such interest component) for which separation of principal and interest is made by request to the Federal Reserve Bank of New York in book-entry form, and shall exclude investments in mutual funds and unit investment trusts;

(B) obligations timely maturing and bearing interest (but only to the extent that the full faith and credit of the United States of America are pledged to the timely payment thereof);

(C) certificates evidencing ownership of the right to the payment of the principal of or interest on obligations described in clause (B), provided that such obligations are held in the custody of a bank or trust company satisfactory to the Trustee in a segregated trust account in the trust department separate from the general assets of such custodian;

(D) bonds or other obligations of any state of the United States of America or of any agency, instrumentality or local governmental unit of any such state (i) which are not callable at the option of the obligor or otherwise prior to maturity or as to which irrevocable notice has been given by the obligor to call such bonds or obligations on the date specified in the notice, and (ii) timely payment of which is fully secured by a fund consisting only of cash or obligations of the character described in clause (A), (B), (C) or (E) which fund may be applied only to the payment when due of such bonds or other obligations; and

(E) with respect to Bonds issued on and after (x) March 24, 2004, direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to timely payment of principal and interest by, FHLMC, FNMA, or the Federal Farm Credit System and (y) August 2, 2010, all obligations described in clause (ii) of the definition of Eligible Investments.

**“Defeased Bonds”** means legally defeased Bonds or Notes and other Bonds or Notes that remain in the hands of their Holders but are no longer deemed Outstanding.

**“Education Aid”** means all State aid that may be forwarded to the Paying Agent for the benefit of the Holders of School Bonds and School Notes pursuant to § 99-b of the State Finance Law.

**“Eligible Investments”** means the following obligations to the extent they are legal for investment of money under the Indenture pursuant to any applicable provision of the Act:

- (i) Defeasance Collateral;
- (ii) direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to timely payment of principal and interest by, FHLMC, FNMA, the Federal Home Loan Bank System or the Federal Farm Credit System;
- (iii) demand and time deposits in or certificates of deposit of, or bankers’ acceptances issued by, any bank or trust company, savings and loan association or savings bank, if such deposits or instruments are rated A-1+ by S&P and the long-term unsecured debt obligations of the institution holding the related account has one of the two highest ratings available for such securities by Moody’s;
- (iv) general obligations of, or obligations guaranteed by, any state of the United States or the District of Columbia receiving one of the two highest long-term unsecured debt ratings available for such securities by Moody’s and S&P;
- (v) commercial or finance company paper (including both non-interest-bearing discount obligations and interest-bearing obligations payable on demand or on a specified date not more than one year after the date of issuance thereof) that is rated A-1+ by S&P and in one of the two highest categories by Moody’s;
- (vi) repurchase obligations with respect to any security described in clause (i) or (ii) above entered into with a broker/dealer, depository institution or trust company (acting as principal) meeting the rating standards described in clause (iii) above;
- (vii) securities bearing interest or sold at a discount that are issued by any corporation incorporated under the laws of the United States of America or any state thereof and rated in one of the two highest categories by Moody’s and either A-1+ or in one of the two highest long-term categories by S&P at the time of such investment or contractual commitment providing for such investment; provided, however, that securities issued by any such corporation will not be Eligible Investments to the extent that investment therein would cause the then outstanding principal amount of securities issued by such corporation that are then held to exceed 20% of the aggregate principal amount of all Eligible Investments then held;
- (viii) units of taxable money market funds which funds are regulated investment companies and seek to maintain a constant net asset value per share and have been rated in one of the two highest categories by Moody’s and at least AAm or AAm-G by S&P, including if so rated the VISTA Money Market Funds or any other fund which the Trustee or an affiliate of the Trustee serves as an investment advisor, administrator, shareholder, servicing agent and/or custodian or sub-custodian, notwithstanding that (a) the Trustee or an affiliate of the Trustee charges and collects fees and expenses (not exceeding current income) from such funds for services rendered, (b) the Trustee charges and collects fees and expenses for services rendered pursuant to the Indenture, and (c) services performed for such funds and pursuant to the Indenture may converge at any time (the Authority specifically authorizes the Trustee or an affiliate of the Trustee to charge and collect all fees and expenses from such funds for services rendered to such funds, in addition to any fees and expenses the Trustee may charge and collect for services rendered pursuant to the Indenture);

(ix) investment agreements or guaranteed investment contracts rated, or with any financial institution whose senior long-term debt obligations are rated, or guaranteed by a financial institution whose senior long-term debt obligations are rated, at the time such agreement or contract is entered into, in one of its two highest rating categories for comparable types of obligations by Moody's and S&P; or

(x) investment agreements with a corporation whose principal business is to enter into such agreements if (a) such corporation has been assigned a counterparty rating by Moody's in one of the two highest categories and S&P has rated the investment agreements of such corporation in one of the two highest categories and (b) the Authority has an option to terminate each agreement in the event that such counterparty rating is downgraded below the two highest categories by Moody's or the investment agreements of such corporation are downgraded below the two highest categories by S&P;

provided that no Eligible Investment may evidence the right to receive only interest with respect to prepayable obligations underlying such instrument or be purchased at a price greater than par if such instrument may be prepaid or called at a price less than its purchase price prior to its stated maturity.

**"Federal Subsidy"** means Revenues, paid or payable to the Authority or its assignee by the United States Treasury in respect of BABs or QSCBs pursuant to Section 6431 of the Tax Code, or such other federal subsidy as may be identified by Series Resolution.

**"FHLMC"** means the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation.

**"Fiduciary"** means the Trustee, any representative of the Holders of Notes or Subordinate Bonds appointed by Series Resolution, or any Paying Agent, including each fiscal agent.

**"First-Month Requirement"** means, for any subaccount funded by Tax Revenues, one-half of Quarterly Senior Debt Service or one-half of Quarterly Subordinate Debt Service payable therefrom, plus any amount payable therefrom in the current Payment Period and any overdue Sinking Fund Requirement.

The term **"fiscal agent"** means each Paying Agent (initially the Trustee) designated by the Authority to act as registrar and transfer agent.

**"Fiscal Year"** means each 12-month period beginning July 1.

**"FNMA"** means the Federal National Mortgage Association.

**"Full Requirement"** means, for any subaccount funded by Tax Revenues, the Quarterly Senior Debt Service or Quarterly Subordinate Debt Service payable therefrom, plus any amount payable therefrom in the current Payment Period and any overdue Sinking Fund Requirement.

**"HYIC"** means the Hudson Yards Infrastructure Corporation, a local development corporation organized under the Not-For-Profit Corporation Law of the State.

**"Incremental Building Aid"** means Building Aid that is not Confirmed Building Aid.

**"Indenture"** means the Amended and Restated Original Indenture entered into as of October 1, 1997, as supplemented, and as amended and restated, between the Authority and the Trustee.

**"LFL"** means the Local Finance Law of the State, as amended from time to time.

**"Majority in Interest"** means the Holders of a majority of the Outstanding Bonds or Notes eligible to act on a matter, measured by face value at maturity unless otherwise specified in a Series Resolution.

The term **"maximum annual debt service on the Bonds"** means the greatest amount of interest, Sinking Fund Requirements and (without duplication) principal payments on Outstanding Bonds (including Subordinate Bonds and Senior Bonds but excluding Notes and ancillary and swap contracts, whether or not payments thereon are Debt Service) payable in the current or any future fiscal year.

**"Moody's"** means Moody's Investors Service; references to Moody's are effective so long as Moody's is a Rating Agency.

**"MOU"** means the Memorandum of Understanding relating to the Education Aid, dated as of October 26, 2006, among the Authority, the City, the State Comptroller and the State Education Department.

**“Net Building Aid”** means Confirmed Building Aid, net of any Competing Claims that the Authority expects to be applied against the Building Aid.

**“Notes”** means all obligations issued by the Authority as Notes under the Indenture.

**“Officer’s Certificate”** means a certificate signed by an Authorized Officer of the Authority or the City.

The term **“operating expenses”** means all expenses incurred by the Authority in the administration of the Authority including but not limited to salaries, administrative expenses, insurance premiums, auditing and legal expenses, fees and expenses incurred for professional consultants and fiduciaries, payments on Notes and swap and ancillary contracts not paid as Costs or from the Bond Account, transfers to pay or service Subordinate Bonds, and all operating expenses so identified by Supplemental Indenture.

**“Outstanding,”** when used to modify Bonds or Notes, refers to Bonds or Notes issued under the Indenture, excluding: (i) Bonds or Notes which have been exchanged or replaced, or delivered to the Trustee for credit against a principal payment; (ii) Bonds or Notes which have been paid; (iii) Bonds or Notes which have become due and for the payment of which money has been duly provided; (iv) Bonds or Notes for which there has been irrevocably set aside sufficient Defeasance Collateral timely maturing and bearing interest, to pay or redeem them; and if any such Bonds or Notes are to be redeemed prior to maturity, the Authority shall have taken all action necessary to redeem such Bonds or Notes and notice of such redemption shall have been duly mailed in accordance with the Indenture or irrevocable instructions so to mail shall have been given to the Trustee; (v) Bonds and Notes the payment of which shall have been provided for pursuant to the defeasance provisions of the Indenture; and (vi) for purposes of any consent or other action to be taken by the Holders of a Majority in Interest or specified percentage of Bonds or Notes, Bonds or Notes held by or for the account of the Authority, the City or any person controlling, controlled by or under common control with either of them.

**“Parity Debt”** means Recovery Obligations and Bonds or Notes payable from the Recovery and Parity Debt Account on a parity with the Recovery Bonds or Recovery Notes, respectively.

**“Payment Period”** means the three months following each Collection Quarter.

**“Personal Income Taxes”** means the taxes paid or payable to the Authority pursuant to §1313 of the Tax Law or a successor statute.

**“Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt”** means Parity Debt issued after November 16, 2006, or so identified pursuant to a Series Resolution.

**“Post-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount”** means the subaccount so designated and held by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture, which subaccount shall be applied to the payment of Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt.

**“Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt”** means obligations payable from the Bond Account that are either incurred after November 16, 2006, or identified as Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt pursuant to a Series Resolution.

**“Post-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount”** means the subaccount so designated and held by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture, which subaccount shall be applied to the payment of Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt.

**“Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt”** means Parity Debt that is not Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt.

**“Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount”** means the subaccount so designated and held by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture, which subaccount shall be applied to the payment of Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt.

**“Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds”** means Senior Bonds that are not Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt.

**“Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount”** means the subaccount so designated and held by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture, which subaccount shall be applied to the payment of Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds.

**“Prior Claims”** means the Competing Claims to which the Authority’s right to the Building Aid is subordinated by the School Financing Act.

**“Project Capital Costs”** or **“Costs”** means (i) costs, appropriated in the capital budget of the City pursuant to Chapters 9 and 10 of the City Charter, as amended from time to time, providing for the construction, reconstruction, acquisition or installation of physical public betterments or improvements which would be classified as capital assets under generally accepted accounting principles for municipalities, or (ii) the costs of any preliminary studies, surveys, maps, plans, estimates and hearings, or (iii) incidental costs, including legal fees,

printing or engraving, publication of notices, taking of title, apportionment of costs, and interest during construction, or (iv) any underwriting or other costs incurred in connection with the financing thereof, or (v) to the extent financed by Recovery Obligations, Recovery Costs (the financing of which is not limited by references to the Capital Financing Need), but (vi) to the extent financed by School Bonds or School Notes, only School Capital Costs.

**“Projects”** means the projects identified in Exhibit A to the Agreement and all other projects, any costs of which are included in a Transitional Capital Plan pursuant to the Act or are Recovery Costs, and financed, by payment or reimbursement, with the proceeds of Bonds or Notes.

**“Qualified School Construction Bonds”** or **“QSCBs”** means qualified school construction bonds under Section 54F of the Tax Code.

**“Qualified Swap”** means an ancillary or swap contract with a counterparty (i) the debt securities of which are rated in one of the two highest long-term debt rating categories by S&P or (ii) the obligations of which under the contract are either guaranteed or insured by an entity the debt securities or insurance policies of which are so rated or (iii) the debt securities of which are rated in the third highest long-term debt rating category by S&P or whose obligations are guaranteed or insured by an entity so rated, in either case the obligations of which under the contract are continuously and fully secured by Eligible Investments meeting criteria provided by S&P to the Authority and then in effect.

**“Quarterly Debt Service”** or **“Quarterly Senior Debt Service”** means, as of any date, Senior Debt Service for the following Payment Period, as certified to the Trustee by Officer’s Certificate.

**“Quarterly Subordinate Debt Service”** means, as of any date, Subordinate Debt Service for the following Payment Period, as certified to the Trustee by Officer’s Certificate.

**“Rating Agency”** means each nationally recognized statistical rating organization that has, at the request of the Authority, a rating in effect for the unenhanced Senior Bonds.

**“Rating Category”** means one of the generic rating categories of any Rating Agency without regard to any refinement or gradation of such rating by a numerical modifier or otherwise.

**“Rating Confirmation”** means evidence that no Senior Bond rating in effect from a Rating Agency will be withdrawn or reduced solely as a result of an action to be taken under the Indenture.

**“Recovery and Parity Debt Account”** or **“Recovery Account”** means the Account established under the Indenture to provide for the payment of Debt Service on Recovery Obligations and Parity Debt.

**“Recovery Bonds”** means Recovery Obligations issued as Bonds.

**“Recovery Costs”** means costs described in Chapter 297.

**“Recovery Notes”** means Recovery Obligations issued as Notes.

**“Recovery Obligations”** means bonds, notes or other obligations described in Chapter 297.

**“Remaining Building Aid”** means the Authority’s projection of the balance of Net Building Aid to be received in the current Fiscal Year, based on the latest estimates from the State and such other information as the Authority deems relevant.

**“Revenues”** means the Tax Revenues (including Alternative Revenues paid or payable to the Authority), the Building Aid and all aid, rents, fees, charges, payments and other income and receipts (other than Note or Bond proceeds) paid or payable to the Authority or the Trustee for the account of the Authority.

**“Sales Taxes”** means Alternative Revenues.

**“School Bond Account”** means the account so designated and held by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture.

**“School Bond Rating Confirmation”** means evidence that no School Bond rating in effect at the request of the Authority from a nationally recognized statistical rating organization will be withdrawn or reduced in Rating Category solely as a result of an action to be taken under the Indenture.

**“School Bonds”** means School Obligations issued as Bonds.

**“School Capital Costs”** means Costs referred to in the School Financing Act.

**“School Financing Act”** means part A-3 of chapter 58 of the 2006 laws of New York, as it may be amended and in effect from time to time.

**“School Notes”** means School Obligations issued as Notes, which shall mature within 13 months from their date of issue.

**“School Obligations”** means bonds, notes, swaps and ancillary contracts payable from the School Bond Account.

**“Senior Agreements”** means ancillary and swap contracts to the extent that amounts are payable thereon from the Bond Account pursuant to a Series Resolution.

**“Senior Bonds”** means all Bonds issued as Senior Bonds in compliance with the provisions of the Indenture.

**“Series”** means all Notes or Bonds so identified in a Series Resolution, regardless of variations in maturity, interest rate or other provisions, and any Notes or Bonds thereafter delivered in exchange or replacement therefor.

**“Series Fiscal Year”** means each Fiscal Year in which School Bonds of a Series are scheduled to be Outstanding; in which, unless otherwise specified by Series Resolution, each payment of principal or interest shall be made on July 15 or January 15.

**“Sinking Fund”** means each Sinking Fund Subaccount under the Indenture. To the extent necessary for compliance with the Authority’s tax covenants and other provisions of the Indenture and the Act, the Authorized Officers of the Authority may subdivide each such subaccount in respect of separate categories or issues of Sinking Fund Bonds.

**“Sinking Fund Bonds”** means Bonds so designated by Series Resolution that are issued pursuant to the Indenture, the Act and such provisions of the LFL as are not inappropriate to be applied to the Sinking Fund Bonds.

**“Sinking Fund Requirement”** means each annual scheduled contribution to a Sinking Fund for the redemption, at or prior to maturity, of Sinking Fund Bonds of a Series. The Authority may apply or credit against any Sinking Fund Requirement the principal amount of any Bonds to which that Sinking Fund Requirement applies (or, to the extent permitted by Series Resolution, other Bonds) that have been purchased or redeemed and not previously so applied or credited.

**“S&P Global Ratings”** or **“S&P”** means S&P Global Ratings service; references to S&P are effective so long as S&P is a Rating Agency.

**“State”** means the State of New York.

**“Statutory Revenues”** means the Personal Income Taxes and the Sales Taxes.

**“Subordinate Agreements”** means ancillary and swap contracts to the extent that such contracts are not Senior Agreements.

**“Subordinate Bonds”** means all Bonds but Senior Bonds.

**“Subordinate Debt Service”** means interest, redemption premium, purchase price to the extent provided by Officer’s Certificate, Sinking Fund Requirements and (without duplication) principal payments due on or on account of Outstanding Parity Debt issued as Bonds and interest on Parity Debt issued as Notes.

The term **“swap contract”** or **“swap”** means an interest rate exchange or similar agreement entered into by the Authority with Rating Confirmation by S&P pursuant to the Act and any appropriate provisions of the LFL that are applicable to the City and made applicable to the Authority by the Act.

**“Tax Code”** or **“Code”** means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

**“Tax-Exempt Bonds”** or **“Tax-Exempt Notes”** means all Bonds or Notes so identified in any Series Resolution.

**“Tax Revenue Subaccount”** means the subaccount of the Collection Account so designated and held by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture.

**“Tax Revenues”** means the Personal Income Taxes and such other revenues, including Alternative Revenues (but excluding Building Aid), as the Authority may derive directly from the State from taxes imposed by the City or the State and collected by the State.

**“Transitional Capital Plan”** means such plan in effect pursuant to the Act.

**“Unfunded Balance,”** with respect to the Building Aid, means Annual School Bond Debt Service remaining to be paid in a Fiscal Year, plus Annual School Bond Debt Service for the following Fiscal Year, minus the amount held in the School Bond Account, but not less than zero.



## THE INDENTURE

*Directors, State and City Not Liable on Notes or Bonds.* Neither the Directors of the Authority nor any person executing Notes, Bonds or other obligations of the Authority shall be liable personally thereon or be subject to any personal liability or accountability solely by reason of the issuance thereof.

The Notes, Bonds and other obligations of the Authority shall not be a debt of either the State or the City, and neither the State nor the City shall be liable thereon, nor shall they be payable out of any funds other than those of the Authority; and the Notes and Bonds shall contain on the face thereof a statement to such effect.

*Security and Pledge.* Pursuant to the Act, the Authority assigns and pledges to the Trustee (a) the Revenues, (b) all rights to receive the Revenues (including the Statutory Revenues) and the proceeds of such rights, (c) all money, contract rights, general intangibles and Accounts held by the Trustee, (d) the covenants of the City and the State in the Indenture, in the Agreement, in the Assignment and in the Act, and (e) any and all other property of every kind and nature from time to time, by delivery or by writing of any kind, pledged, assigned or transferred as and for additional security. Except as specifically provided in the Indenture, this assignment and pledge does not include: (i) the rights of the Authority pursuant to provisions for consent or other action by the Authority, notice to the Authority, indemnity or the filing of documents with the Authority, or otherwise for its benefit and not for that of the Beneficiaries, or (ii) any right or power reserved to the Authority pursuant to the Act or other law. The Authority will implement, protect and defend this pledge by all appropriate legal action, the cost thereof to be an operating expense. The preceding, and all pledges and security interests made and granted by the Authority pursuant to the Indenture, are immediately valid, binding and perfected to the full extent provided by the Act. The foregoing collateral is pledged and a security interest is therein granted, to secure the payment of Bonds, Notes, and payments in respect of Senior Agreements and Subordinate Agreements; provided, however, that the pledge and security interest granted to secure the Authority's obligation to pay Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Agreements shall be subject and subordinate to the pledge and security interest granted to secure Debt Service, and all Revenues, including the Building Aid, shall be applied in accordance with the Indenture. The lien of such pledge and the obligation to perform the contractual provisions made by the Indenture shall have priority over any or all other obligations and liabilities of the Authority secured by the Revenues. The Authority shall not incur any obligations, except as authorized by the Indenture, secured by a lien on the Revenues or Accounts equal or prior to the lien of the Indenture.

*Defeasance of the Indenture.* When (a) there is held by or for the account of the Trustee Defeasance Collateral in such principal amounts, bearing interest at such rates and with such maturities as will provide sufficient funds to pay or redeem all obligations to Beneficiaries in full (to be verified by a nationally recognized firm of verification agents or independent certified public accountants), (b) if any Bonds or Notes are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, the Authority shall have taken all action necessary to redeem such Bonds or Notes and notice of such redemption shall have been duly given or irrevocable instructions to give notice shall have been given to the Trustee, and (c) all the rights of the Authority and the Trustee have been provided for, then upon written notice from the Authority to the Trustee, the Beneficiaries shall cease to be entitled to any benefit or security under the Indenture except the right to receive payment of the funds so held and other rights which by their nature cannot be satisfied prior to or simultaneously with termination of the lien, the security interests created by the Indenture (except in such funds and investments) shall terminate, and the Authority and the Trustee shall execute and deliver such instruments as may be necessary to discharge the Trustee's lien and security interests.

*Legal Defeasance of Particular Bonds.* If (a) any Bonds or Notes are identified as legally defeased in a Series Resolution pursuant to the Indenture, (b) there is held by or for the account of the Trustee Defeasance Collateral in such principal amounts, bearing fixed interest at such rates and with such maturities as will provide sufficient funds to pay or redeem all obligations to the Holders of such Bonds in full (to be verified by a nationally recognized firm of verification agents or independent certified public accountants), (c) the Authority has taken all action necessary to redeem any such Bonds or Notes to be redeemed prior to maturity and notice of such redemption has been duly given or irrevocable instructions to give notice have been given to the Trustee, and (d) unless otherwise specified by Series Resolution at issuance of the Bonds or Notes to be defeased, the Authority has delivered to the Trustee an opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such legal defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts (if any), in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such legal defeasance had not occurred, *then* the Authority's obligations under the Indenture with respect to such Bonds or Notes shall terminate, the debt represented thereby shall be legally satisfied, and the Holders shall cease to be

entitled to any benefit or security under the Indenture except the right to receive payment of the funds so held and other rights which by their nature cannot be satisfied until such Bonds or Notes are actually paid. Upon such defeasance, the funds and investments required to pay or redeem the Bonds or Notes shall be irrevocably set aside for that purpose, and money held for defeasance shall be invested only as described above and applied to the retirement of the Bonds or Notes.

*Notes and Bonds of the Authority.* By Series Resolution complying procedurally and in substance with the Act and the Indenture, the Authority may authorize, issue, sell and deliver (i) Bonds or (ii) Notes in anticipation thereof, from time to time in such principal amounts as the Authority shall determine to be necessary, to provide sufficient funds to meet a Capital Financing Need, including paying and reimbursing Project Capital Costs, and funding reserves to secure Notes or Bonds; and may issue Notes or Bonds to renew or refund Notes or Bonds, by exchange, purchase, redemption or payment, and establish such escrows therefor as it may determine.

Bonds and Notes may be issued only:

(i) as Senior Bonds (or Notes in anticipation thereof) to pay or reimburse Project Capital Costs or refund or renew such Bonds or Notes, but not to exceed \$12 billion in Outstanding principal amount, and subject to a \$330 million limit on Quarterly Debt Service to be payable, or

(ii) as Subordinate Bonds (or Notes in anticipation thereof), with Rating Confirmation; but

(iii) no Series of Senior Bonds shall be authenticated and delivered without Rating Confirmation except upon receipt by the Trustee of the following:

(w) a certificate by the Director of Management and Budget setting forth the most recent collections for the 12 consecutive calendar months ended not more than two months prior to the date of such certificate, of the Statutory Revenues, in effect at the date of issuance of such Series of Bonds, collected by the State and to be payable to the Authority; and

(x) an Officer's Certificate of the Authority setting forth

(I) the aggregate amount of Debt Service (excluding any accrued or capitalized interest), including such series of Bonds, for each Fiscal Year such Bonds will be Outstanding,

(II) the aggregate amount of operating expenses as estimated by an Authorized Officer of the Authority for the current Fiscal Year, and

(III) that the amounts set forth pursuant to clause (w) after deducting the operating expenses set forth pursuant to clause (x)(II), will be at least three times such aggregate amount set forth in clause (x)(I) for each Fiscal Year set forth pursuant to clause (x)(I).

Each interest rate on Outstanding and proposed variable-rate Bonds or Notes (if not economically fixed), shall be assumed at the maximum rate payable to investors other than parties to an ancillary contract.

The Notes and Bonds shall bear such dates and shall mature at such times as the Authority may provide pursuant to the Act. The Notes and Bonds shall bear interest at such fixed or variable rates, and shall be in such denomination, be in such form, either coupon or registered, carry such registration privileges, be executed in such manner, be payable in such medium of payment, at such place and be subject to such terms of redemption as the Authority may provide pursuant to the Act. The Notes and Bonds may be sold by the Authority at public or private sale pursuant to the Act.

*Documents to be Delivered to Trustee.* The Authority may from time to time request the authentication and delivery of a Series of Bonds or Notes by providing to the Trustee (among other things) the following:

(a) an Officer's Certificate to the effect that there is no default that will remain uncured immediately following such delivery, nor an uncured failure of the State or the City to comply with their respective agreements provided for in the Act, as in effect at the date of the Indenture; and

(b) an opinion of Counsel as to the due authorization, execution and delivery by the Authority of the Indenture and each relevant Supplemental Indenture; to the effect that the Series Resolution is in full force and effect and that the Bonds or Notes are valid and binding obligations of the Authority secured by the pledge of the Indenture; and after delivery of the first series of Bonds, to the effect that the issuance of the Bonds or Notes will not

adversely affect the exclusion from gross income for federal income tax purposes of interest on Tax-Exempt Bonds or Tax-Exempt Notes theretofore issued (as set forth in the opinions delivered with such prior Bonds or Notes).

*Ancillary and Swap Contracts.* Pursuant to the Act, the Authority may enter into, amend or terminate, as it determines to be necessary or appropriate, any ancillary or swap contracts, including Senior Agreements, to facilitate the issuance, sale, resale, purchase, repurchase or payment of Bonds or Notes. The Authority may by Series Resolution provide for the payment through the Bond Account of amounts due on ancillary and swap contracts.

*Bond Anticipation Notes.* Whenever the Authority shall authorize the issuance of a Series of Bonds, the Authority may, by Series Resolution, authorize the issuance of Notes and renewals thereof in anticipation of such Series of Bonds. The interest on such Notes and renewals thereof may be made payable from the proceeds of such Notes, from the Bond Account, from the Recovery Account, from the School Bond Account or from the proceeds of renewal notes or the Series of Bonds in anticipation of which such Notes are issued. The proceeds of such renewal notes or Bonds may be pledged for the payment of the principal of or interest on such Notes, and any such pledge shall have a priority over any other pledge of such proceeds created by the Indenture. The Authority may also pledge the Revenues and, subject to the Indenture, the Accounts, to the payment of the principal of such Notes.

*Recovery Obligations and Other Parity Debt.* The Authority may from time to time request the authentication and delivery of a Series of Recovery Obligations or other Parity Debt by providing to the Trustee (among other things) the following at the delivery of Bonds or of Notes in anticipation thereof (but not both):

(i) a certificate by the Director of Management and Budget setting forth the collections for the most recent Fiscal Year ended at least two months prior to the date of such certificate, of the Statutory Revenues collected by the State and to be payable to the Authority; and

(ii) an Officer's Certificate of the Authority setting forth (x) the sum of \$1.32 billion and the aggregate amount of Subordinate Debt Service, including such Series of Bonds (assumed, at the delivery of Notes, to be issued at the Note maturity and to amortize over 30 years at an interest rate of 7%, with level debt service), for each Fiscal Year such Bonds will be Outstanding and (y) that the amounts set forth pursuant to clause (i) will be at least 3 times the sum set forth in clause (ii)(x) for each Fiscal Year set forth pursuant to clause (ii)(x).

*School Bonds and School Notes.* The Authority may from time to time request the authentication and delivery of a Series of School Bonds or School Notes by providing to the Trustee (among other things) the following at the delivery of such Bonds or of Notes in anticipation thereof (but not both) an Officer's Certificate setting forth:

(i) Annual School Bond Debt Service, including debt service on such Series of Bonds (assumed, at the delivery of Notes, to be issued at or prior to the Note maturity and to amortize and bear interest as specified in such Officer's Certificate) in each Series Fiscal Year; and

(ii) the Confirmed Building Aid payable in the Fiscal Year preceding each Series Fiscal Year, which shall be at least equal to the amount set forth in clause (i) for each Series Fiscal Year.

Each interest rate on Outstanding and proposed variable-rate Bonds or Notes (if not offset or economically fixed by a Qualified Swap, a liquidity account, or otherwise with School Bond Rating Confirmation), shall be assumed at the maximum rate payable to investors other than parties to an ancillary contract.

*Project Capital Costs.* Proceeds of the sale of the Bonds and Notes issued for capital purposes shall be promptly deposited in the Project Fund established under the Agreement to the extent set forth by Series Resolution, and applied to finance Project Capital Costs pursuant to the Act. The Authority shall transfer its earnings on the Project Fund to the Collection Account as Building Aid or Tax Revenues, or otherwise apply such earnings in accordance with the Tax Code pursuant to Officer's Certificate.

*Federal Proceeds Subaccount.* A Build America Subaccount has been established in the Project Fund, and redesignated the Federal Proceeds Subaccount. Proceeds of BABs, QSCBs and other federally subsidized Bonds shall be deposited in such subaccount and all money therein, including earnings, shall be applied in compliance with the Tax Code, the Indenture and the advice of Counsel. To the extent necessary for such compliance, the Authorized Officers of the Authority may subdivide such subaccount in respect of separate categories or issues of federally subsidized Bonds.

*Limited Purpose of Indenture.* The Indenture provides for the issuance and payment of the Authority's obligations and the financing and refinancing of Project Capital Costs. Except as set forth in the Agreement, the

Authority, the City and the Trustee shall have no liability to each other or to the Beneficiaries for the construction, reconstruction, acquisition, installation, physical condition, ownership or operation of any Project.

*Application of Revenues.* Provision is made in the Act for the payment to the Authority of the Revenues, and the Authority has requested the State Comptroller to make such payments to the Collection Account to be held by the Trustee. Any Revenues received by the Authority shall be promptly deposited in the Collection Account. Two subaccounts are established in the Collection Account: the Tax Revenue Subaccount and the Building Aid Subaccount. Building Aid transferred to the Bond Account or the Recovery Account may be treated as an interfund advance and transferred to the School Bond Account or restored to the Building Aid Subaccount through an Officer's Certificate directing the transfer of Tax Revenues at the fourth level of priority. The transfers and payments of Revenues shall be appropriately adjusted by Officer's Certificate to reflect expected Revenues, the date of issue of Notes or Bonds, any accrued or capitalized interest deposited in the Accounts, actual rates of interest, any amount needed or held in the Accounts for Debt Service or other obligations, and any purchase or redemption of Notes or Bonds, so that there will be available on each payment date the amount necessary to pay Debt Service and other obligations from the designated source of Revenues and so that accrued or capitalized interest will be applied to the installments of interest to which it is applicable.

*Bond Account.* A Bond Account is established with the Trustee and money shall be deposited therein as provided in the Indenture. Accrued interest received upon the sale of Notes (if so specified by Series Resolution) or Senior Bonds shall be deposited in the Bond Account. Two subaccounts are established in the Bond Account: the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Post-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount. The money in the Bond Account shall be held in trust and, except as otherwise provided, shall be applied solely to the payment of Senior Debt Service. If at any time the amount held in either subaccount exceeds the Full Requirement, the Trustee shall transfer such excess to the Collection Account as Tax Revenues. The Trustee shall pay, or transfer money from the applicable subaccount of the Bond Account to a Paying Agent in time for the Paying Agent to pay Debt Service when due in same-day funds.

*Redemption Account.* A Redemption Account is established with the Trustee and money shall be deposited therein as provided in the Indenture. The money and investments in such Account shall be held in trust and, except as otherwise specified in the Indenture, shall be applied by the Trustee to the redemption of Bonds and Notes. Upon direction by Officer's Certificate of the Authority, the Trustee shall apply money in the Redemption Account to the purchase of Bonds and Notes for cancellation at prices not exceeding (unless so directed by Officer's Certificate of the Authority) the price at which they are then redeemable (or next redeemable if they are not then redeemable), but not with money required to pay Bonds or Notes for which notice of redemption has been given. Accrued interest on the purchase of Bonds and Notes may be paid from the Bond Account (if so payable under the Indenture) or as directed by Officer's Certificate of the Authority.

When money in the Redemption Account is to be applied to the redemption of Notes or Bonds, the Trustee shall pay, or transfer such money to a Paying Agent in time for the Paying Agent to pay, such Notes or Bonds when due in same-day funds.

If on any date the amount in the Bond Account is less than the amount then required to be applied to pay Debt Service then due, the Trustee shall apply the amount in the Redemption Account (other than any sum irrevocably set aside for particular Notes or Bonds no longer Outstanding) to the extent necessary to meet the deficiency.

*Redemption of the Bonds and Notes.* The Authority may redeem Bonds and Notes at its option in accordance with their terms and shall redeem Bonds and Notes in accordance with their terms pursuant to any mandatory redemption ("sinking fund") requirements established by Series Resolution. When Bonds or Notes are called for redemption, the accrued interest thereon shall become due on the redemption date. To the extent not otherwise provided, the Authority shall deposit with the Trustee on or prior to the redemption date a sufficient sum to pay the redemption price and accrued interest.

The Authority shall not by purchase or optional redemption cause Quarterly Debt Service to exceed \$330 million unless either cash is on hand therefor, held by the Authority or in the Redemption Account, or this limit has been modified by Officer's Certificate of the Authority with Rating Confirmation.

Unless otherwise specified by Series Resolution, there shall, at the option of the Authority, be applied to or credited against any sinking fund requirement the principal amount of any such Bonds that have been defeased,

purchased or redeemed and not previously so applied or credited. Defeased Bonds shall, at the option of the Authority, no longer be entitled, but may be subject, to the provisions thereof for mandatory redemption.

When Bonds or Notes are to be redeemed prior to maturity, the Trustee shall give notice in the name of the Authority, which notice shall identify the Bonds or Notes to be redeemed, state the date fixed for redemption and state that such Bonds or Notes will be redeemed at the corporate trust office of the Trustee or a Paying Agent. The notice shall further state that on such date there shall become due and payable upon each Bond or Note to be redeemed the redemption price thereof, together with interest accrued to the redemption date, and that money therefor having been deposited with the Trustee or Paying Agent, from and after such date, interest thereon shall cease to accrue. The Trustee shall give 30 days' notice by mail, or otherwise transmit the redemption notice in accordance with the Indenture and any appropriate provisions of the LFL, to the registered owners of any Bonds or Notes which are to be redeemed, at their addresses shown on the registration books of the Authority. Such notice may be waived by any Holder of Bonds or Notes to be redeemed. Failure by a particular Holder to receive notice, or any defect in the notice to such Holder, shall not affect the redemption of any other Bond or Note.

Unless otherwise specified by Series Resolution: (i) if less than all the Outstanding Bonds or Notes of like Series and maturity are to be redeemed, the particular Bonds or Notes to be redeemed shall be selected by the Trustee by such method as it shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions (equal to any authorized denominations) of the principal of Bonds or Notes of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination, and (ii) the Trustee shall redeem any and all Bonds or Notes held by the provider of an ancillary contract prior to any other Bonds or Notes redeemed hereunder unless otherwise directed by Officer's Certificate of the Authority.

No Bonds or Notes may be optionally redeemed from the Building Aid Subaccount unless the Unfunded Balance is zero.

*Investments.* Pending its use under the Indenture, money in the Accounts may be invested by the Trustee in Eligible Investments maturing or redeemable at the option of the holder at or before the time when such money is expected to be needed and shall be so invested pursuant to written direction of the Authority if there is not then an Event of Default known to the Trustee. Investments shall be held by the Trustee in the respective Accounts and shall be sold or redeemed to the extent necessary to make payments or transfers from each Account.

Cash deposits in the Accounts shall be secured as and to the extent described in Sections 10.3 and 12 of the General Municipal Law of the State, as amended from time to time.

Except as otherwise specified, any interest realized on investments in any Account and any profit realized upon the sale or other disposition thereof shall be credited to the Collection Account. Interest realized on investments in the Building Aid Subaccount or the School Bond Account and any profits realized upon the sale or other disposition thereof shall be credited to the Building Aid Subaccount.

The Trustee may hold undivided interests in Eligible Investments for more than one Account (for which they are eligible) and may make interfund transfers in kind.

If any money is invested under the Indenture and a loss results therefrom so that there are insufficient funds to pay Debt Service or to redeem Bonds or Notes called for redemption, then the deficiency shall be timely filled from Revenues (as Debt Service if so payable under the Indenture).

*Recovery and Parity Debt Account.* A Recovery and Parity Debt Account is established with the Trustee and money shall be deposited therein as provided in the Indenture or by Officer's Certificate. The Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount and the Post-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount are established as subaccounts in the Recovery Account. The money in each subaccount of the Recovery Account shall be held in trust and, except as otherwise provided, shall be applied solely to the payments of Recovery Obligations and Parity Debt payable therefrom. If at any time the amount held in either subaccount exceeds the Full Requirement, the Trustee shall transfer such excess to the Collection Account as Tax Revenues. The Trustee shall pay, or transfer money from the applicable subaccount of the Recovery Account to a Paying Agent in time for such Paying Agent to pay Recovery Obligations and Parity Debt when due in same-day funds.

*School Bond Account.* A School Bond Account is established with the Trustee and money shall be deposited therein as provided in the Indenture or by Officer's Certificate. The money in the School Bond Account shall be held in trust and, except as otherwise provided, shall be applied solely to the payment of School Obligations. If at any time the Unfunded Balance is zero, the Trustee shall transfer any amount in the School Bond

Account to the Collection Account as Building Aid. The Trustee shall pay, or transfer money from the School Bond Account to a Paying Agent in time for such Paying Agent to pay School Obligations when due in same-day funds.

*Application of Tax Revenues.* (a) Provision is made in the Act for the payment to the Authority of the Tax Revenues, and the Authority has requested the State Comptroller to make such payments to the Collection Account for application under the Indenture. Any Tax Revenues received by the Authority or the Trustee shall be promptly deposited in the Tax Revenue Subaccount and shall be applied upon receipt by the Trustee, in the following order of priority: *first* to the Bond Account to pay Debt Service pursuant to the Indenture; *second* to the Authority's operating expenses, which may include deposits to the Redemption Account for optional redemption and reserves to be held by the Authority for payment of operating expenses, in such amounts as may be determined by Officer's Certificate; *third* pursuant to Supplemental Indentures for the benefit of Noteholders, Subordinate Bondholders and parties to ancillary and swap contracts, to the extent such Supplemental Indentures may require application of Tax Revenues to pay items after payment of Debt Service and operating expenses; *fourth* pursuant to each Officer's Certificate making reference to this level of priority in accordance with the Indenture; and *fifth* daily or as soon as practicable but not later than the last day of each month, to the order of the City, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture.

(b) At the beginning of each Collection Quarter, the Trustee shall begin to transfer all Tax Revenues from the Tax Revenue Subaccount to each subaccount of the Bond Account in proportion to the unfunded balance of each First-Month Requirement, and shall continue such transfers until the amount in each subaccount is equal to the First-Month Requirement. On the first day of the second month of each Collection Quarter, the Trustee shall resume or continue such transfers, in proportion to the unfunded balance of each Full Requirement, until the Full Requirement is held in each subaccount. To the extent that Quarterly Debt Service includes principal, interest or premium on Bonds or Notes to be purchased or redeemed prior to maturity, such Debt Service may be paid through the Redemption Account, and the Authority may by Officer's Certificate direct the Trustee in writing to transfer Revenues thereto, rather than to the Bond Account.

(c) Pursuant to the third level of priority: at the beginning of each Collection Quarter, the Trustee shall begin to transfer all Tax Revenues to each subaccount of the Recovery Account in proportion to the unfunded balance of each First-Month Requirement, and shall continue such transfers until the amount in each subaccount is equal to the First-Month Requirement; and on the first Business Day of the second month of each Collection Quarter, the Trustee shall resume or continue such transfers, in proportion to the unfunded balance of each Full Requirement, until the Full Requirement is held in each subaccount. To the extent that Quarterly Subordinate Debt Service includes principal, interest or premium on Bonds or Notes to be purchased or redeemed prior to maturity, or Revenues are available to pay principal of Notes, such amounts may be paid through the Redemption Account or an escrow fund, and the Authority may by Officer's Certificate direct the Trustee to transfer Revenues thereto.

The Authority may by Officer's Certificate estimate interest payable at a variable rate, or treat anticipated receipts from a Qualified Swap as offsets thereto.

Revenues shall in all events be transferred from the Collection Account to the Bond Account or the Redemption Account to provide for the timely payment of Debt Service on Pre-07 Senior Bonds, and all Revenues shall be applied to pay Debt Service and other amounts then overdue pursuant to those provisions of the Indenture summarized below under "*Application of Money.*"

A Sinking Fund Subaccount is established in each of the Post-'07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Post-'07 S-1 Parity Subaccount for the redemption, at or prior to maturity, of such Sinking Fund Bonds as may be made payable therefrom. Tax Revenues shall be deposited in each Sinking Fund pursuant to the Sinking Fund Requirements specified by Series Resolution, which deposits may be adjusted to recognize early retirement of Bonds and earnings and profits on Eligible Investments in each Sinking Fund (if required by the Authority's tax covenants or directed by Officer's Certificate to be retained therein) and shall be provided for as Quarterly Senior Debt Service or Quarterly Subordinate Debt Service. Unless otherwise specified by Officer's Certificate, interest on the Sinking Fund Bonds shall be payable from the Post-'07 S-1 Senior Subaccount or the Post-'07 S-1 Parity Subaccount (exclusive of each Sinking Fund).

*Application of Building Aid.* (a) Provision is made by the Act and the Assignment for the payment to the Authority of the Confirmed Building Aid and the Incremental Building Aid, and the Authority has requested the State Comptroller to make such payments to the Collection Account. Any Building Aid received by the Authority or the Trustee shall be promptly deposited in the Building Aid Subaccount and shall be applied by the Trustee pursuant

to the Indenture, in the following order of priority, as implemented in part by provisions described below: *first* to Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds; *second* to the Authority's operating expenses, which may include reserves to be held by the Authority for payment of operating expenses, in such amounts as may be determined by Officer's Certificate, but excluding operating expenses properly allocable to Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt and Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt; *third* to Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt and then to School Obligations; and *fourth* daily or as soon as practicable but not later than the last day of each month, to the order of the City, free and clear of the lien of the Indenture.

(b) To provide for the timely payment of School Obligations subject to the rights of the Holders of Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds and Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt, money in the Building Aid Subaccount shall be retained therein until transferred as follows:

(1) at any time, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount or the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount, in that order of priority, to pay Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds or Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt then due and not otherwise provided for;

(2) in the first month of each Collection Quarter, (A) to the School Bond Account beginning the first day when (i) the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their First-Month Requirements and (ii) the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, and continuing until the earlier of (x) the end of the month and (y) the day when the Unfunded Balance is zero; and (B) to the order of the City, if no transfer to the School Bond Account is required, beginning the first day when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their First-Month Requirements and continuing until the end of the month; and

(3) in the second and third months of each Collection Quarter, (A) to the School Bond Account beginning the first day when (i) the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their Full Requirements and (ii) the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, and continuing until the earlier of (x) the end of the Collection Quarter and (y) the day when the Unfunded Balance is zero; (B) to the order of the City, if no transfer to the School Bond Account is required, beginning when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount are funded to their Full Requirements and continuing until the end of the Collection Quarter; and (C) on the last Business Day of the Collection Quarter, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and then the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount until both of them have been funded to their Full Requirements; then to the School Bond Account, if the Remaining Building Aid is not more than 110% of the Unfunded Balance, until the Unfunded Balance is zero; and then to the order of the City.

A Sinking Fund Subaccount is established in the School Bond Account for the redemption, at or prior to maturity, of such Sinking Fund Bonds as may be made payable therefrom. Building Aid shall be deposited in such Sinking Fund pursuant to the Indenture, which deposits may be adjusted to recognize early retirement of Bonds and earnings and profits on Eligible Investments in the Sinking Fund (if required by the Authority's tax covenants or directed by Officer's Certificate to be retained therein) and shall be provided for as Annual School Bond Debt Service. Unless otherwise specified by Officer's Certificate, interest on the Sinking Fund Bonds shall be payable from the School Bond Account (exclusive of the Sinking Fund).

*Application of Federal Subsidy.* (a) A Federal Subaccount and a BAB Subaccount have been established in the Collection Account, and redesignated the Federal Collection Subaccount and the Federal Bond Subaccount, respectively. The Federal Subsidy shall be deposited in the Federal Collection Subaccount and retained therein until transferred as follows:

(1) at any time, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount or the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount, in that order of priority, to pay Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds or Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt then due and not otherwise provided for;

(2) in the first month of each Collection Quarter, beginning the first day when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their First-Month Requirements and continuing until the end of the month, to the Federal Bond Subaccount or, if so directed by Officer's Certificate, to the order of the City; and

(3) in the second and third months of each Collection Quarter, (A) to the Federal Bond Subaccount, beginning when both the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount have been funded to their Full Requirements and continuing until the end of the Collection Quarter, and (B) on the last Business Day of the Collection Quarter, to the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Subaccount and then the Pre-07 S-1 Parity Subaccount until both of them have been funded to their Full Requirements; and then to the Federal Bond Subaccount or, if so directed by Officer's Certificate, to the order of the City.

Money in the Federal Bond Subaccount shall be applied to principal of and interest on Bonds (not including Tax-Exempt Bonds unless such application is permitted by the Authority's tax covenants) or, if so directed by Officer's Certificate, paid to the order of the City.

*Purchase of HYIC Obligations.* The Authority may apply Tax Revenues available at the fourth level of priority to the purchase of obligations of HYIC (not exceeding the amounts specified by Supplemental Indentures approved by unanimous vote of the Directors of the Authority), which HYIC obligations shall be held by the Authority.

*Contract; Obligations to Beneficiaries.* In consideration of the purchase and acceptance of any or all of the Bonds and Notes and ancillary and swap contracts by those who shall hold the same from time to time, the provisions of the Indenture shall be a part of the contract of the Authority with the Beneficiaries, and shall be deemed to be and shall constitute contracts among the Authority, the Trustee, the City to the extent specified in the Agreement, the Beneficiaries from time to time and, to the extent specified in the Act, the State. The pledge made in the Indenture and the covenants therein set forth to be performed by the Authority, the City and the State shall be for the equal benefit, protection and security of the Beneficiaries of the same priority. All of the Bonds or Notes or ancillary or swap contracts of the same priority, regardless of the time or times of their issuance or maturity, shall be of equal rank without preference, priority or distinction of any thereof over any other except as expressly provided pursuant to the Indenture and the Act.

The Authority shall pay when due all sums payable on the Bonds and Notes, from the Revenues and money designated in the Indenture, subject only to (i) the Act and the Indenture, and (ii) to the extent permitted by the Act and the Indenture, (x) agreements with Holders of Outstanding Bonds and Notes pledging particular collateral for the payment thereof and (y) the rights of Beneficiaries under ancillary and swap contracts. The obligation of the Authority to pay principal, interest and redemption premium, if any, to the Holders of Bonds and Notes shall be absolute and unconditional, shall be binding and enforceable in all circumstances whatsoever, and shall not be subject to setoff, recoupment or counterclaim. The Authority shall also pay its operating expenses.

*Enforcement.* The Authority shall enforce or cause the Trustee to enforce by appropriate legal proceedings, each covenant, pledge or agreement made by the City or the State in the Indenture or in or pursuant to the Act for the benefit of any of the Beneficiaries, including the Assignment and the related provisions of the School Financing Act.

The Authority shall:

- (1) protect and defend, as an operating expense, its and the Trustee's claim to every material portion of the Building Aid, and the Fiduciaries shall cooperate therein at the Authority's expense;
- (2) with the Fiduciaries, as aforesaid, and the City pursuant to the Assignment (a) contest any Competing Claim to any material portion of the Building Aid that (i) it deems factually or legally unfounded, or (ii) is based on constitutional, statutory or regulatory ambiguity, on any provision of the Education Law, or on any action or failure to act of the City; and (b) cooperate with the Holders in filing and prosecuting any claim made by Holders under § 99-b of the State Finance Law and in opposing any Competing Claim;
- (3) provide the calculations contemplated by the MOU; and
- (4) not agree to any modification of the MOU that is materially adverse to the Holders of the School Bonds. Without limitation, a modification that receives School Bond Rating Confirmation is not materially adverse to such Holders.

*Sales Taxes.* For each fiscal year of the City for which the Mayor has given a notice to the State Comptroller pursuant to the State Covenant in the Act, the Authority shall request the State Comptroller to schedule payments of Sales Taxes to the Authority, based on the Authority's projections of Personal Income Taxes and debt service, so that the Authority will receive Tax Revenues in each Collection Quarter sufficient to pay its obligations payable therefrom but in all events at least equal to the Quarterly Debt Service. Such requests shall be modified, as often as necessary, to reflect experience and revised projections.

*Tax Covenant.* The Authority shall at all times do and perform all acts and things permitted by law and necessary or desirable in order to assure that interest paid by the Authority on Tax-Exempt Bonds and Tax-Exempt Notes shall be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes pursuant to § 103(a) of the Tax Code; and no funds of the Authority shall at any time be used directly or indirectly to acquire securities or obligations the



acquisition or holding of which would cause any Tax-Exempt Bond or Tax-Exempt Note to be an arbitrage bond as defined in such Code and any applicable Regulations issued thereunder. If and to the extent required by the Code, the Authority shall periodically, at such times as may be required to comply with the Code, pay from the Project Fund or as an operating expense the amount, if any, required by the Code to be rebated thereto or paid as a related penalty.

*Accounts and Reports.* (a) The Authority shall:

(1) cause to be kept books of account in which complete and accurate entries shall be made of its transactions relating to all funds and accounts under the Indenture, which books shall at all reasonable times be subject to the inspection of the City, the Trustee and the Holders of an aggregate of not less than 25% in principal amount of Bonds and Notes then Outstanding or their representatives duly authorized in writing;

(2) annually, within 185 days after the close of each fiscal year, deliver to the Trustee and each Rating Agency, a copy of its audited financial statements for such fiscal year;

(3) keep in effect at all times an accurate and current schedule of all Quarterly Debt Service to be payable during the life of then Outstanding Bonds, Notes and Senior Agreements secured by the Bond Account; of Remaining Building Aid, and of amounts payable from the Recovery Account and the School Bond Account; certifying for the purpose such estimates as may be necessary; and

(4) deliver to each Rating Agency a quarterly statement of cash flows, including Revenues received, transfers to the Accounts, Bonds and Notes issued, and payments of principal and interest, and an annual statement of the State's costs in administering, collecting and distributing the Tax Revenues.

(b) To implement the State Covenant, the Chairperson of the Authority shall, not less than 30 days prior to the beginning of each City fiscal year, certify to the State Comptroller, the Governor, and the Directors of the Authority a schedule of maximum annual debt service payments due on the Bonds and Notes respectively then Outstanding.

(c) The Authority shall deliver to the Trustee and each Rating Agency, not less often than quarterly, an Officer's Certificate showing (i) Revenues on a pro-forma basis for the current fiscal year and each of the two preceding fiscal years, as received, expected and adjusted as if current statutes had been in effect for the three-year period; (ii) Debt Service to be paid in the next three fiscal years; and (iii) whether such Revenues are at least 150% of such Debt Service.

*Ratings.* Unless otherwise specified by Series Resolution, the Authority shall pay such reasonable fees and provide such available information as may be necessary to obtain and keep in effect ratings on all the Senior Bonds and the School Bonds from at least two nationally recognized statistical rating organizations.

*No Other Business.* The Authority shall not engage in any line of business not contemplated by the Act.

*City Covenant.* The Authority includes in the Indenture the City's pledge and agreement with the Holders of the Outstanding Bonds and Notes that the City will not limit or alter the rights vested in the Authority by the Act to fulfill the terms of any agreements made with such Holders pursuant to the Act, or in any way impair the rights and remedies of such Holders or the security for such Bonds and Notes until such Bonds and Notes, together with the interest thereon and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of such Holders, are fully paid and discharged. This City Covenant shall not be deemed to restrict any right the City may have to amend, modify or otherwise alter local laws imposing or relating to the Personal Income Taxes so long as, after giving effect to such amendment, modification or other alteration, the amount of Tax Revenues projected by the Mayor to be available to the Authority during each of its fiscal years following the effective date of such amendment, modification or other alteration shall not be less than 150% of maximum annual debt service on the Bonds.

*No Indebtedness or Funds of City.* The Indenture does not constitute indebtedness of the City for purposes of § 20.00 of the LFL or any constitutional or statutory limitation. The Authority's revenues are not funds of the City.

*State Covenants and Tax Contract.* The Authority includes in the Indenture:

(a) the State's pledge and agreement with the Holders of Outstanding Bonds and Notes that the State will not limit or alter the rights vested in the Authority by the Act to fulfill the terms of any agreements made with

the Holders, or in any way impair the rights and remedies of such Holders or the security for the Bonds and Notes until such Bonds and Notes, together with the interest thereon, and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of such Holders, are fully paid and discharged;

(b) the further terms of § 2799-ii of the Act to the effect that: Nothing contained in this covenant shall be deemed to restrict the right of the State to amend, modify, repeal or otherwise alter statutes imposing or relating to the Personal Income Taxes, but such taxes payable to the Authority shall in all events continue to be so payable so long as any such taxes are imposed. Not less than 30 days prior to the beginning of each City fiscal year, the Chairperson of the Authority shall certify to the State Comptroller, the Governor, and the members of the Board of Directors of the Authority a schedule of maximum annual debt service payments due on the Bonds and Notes then Outstanding. To the extent that Personal Income Taxes payable to the Authority during such fiscal year are projected by the Mayor to be insufficient to meet at least 150% of maximum annual debt service on the Bonds then Outstanding, the Mayor shall so notify the State Comptroller and the State Comptroller shall pay to the Authority from Sales Taxes such amount as is necessary to provide at least 150% of such maximum annual debt service on the Bonds. Nothing in this covenant shall be deemed to obligate the State to make any additional payments or impose any taxes to satisfy the obligations of the Authority;

(c) subdivision 4 of § 2799-tt of the Act (added by the School Financing Act) to the effect that: The State Covenant shall be fully applicable to School Bonds and School Notes and may be included in any agreement with the Holders thereof. Nothing contained in this covenant shall be deemed to restrict the right of the State to amend, modify, repeal or otherwise alter statutes relating to the Building Aid, but such Building Aid shall in all events (i) continue to be so payable, as assigned, so long as any such Building Aid is paid and (ii) continue to be calculated in accordance with the same formula used for such calculation, and otherwise on the same basis as such aid is calculated, on the date that the applicable project is approved for reimbursement;

(d) the last paragraph of § 99-b of the State Finance Law (as amended by the School Financing Act) to the effect that: The State hereby covenants with the Holders of the School Bonds and School Notes that it will not repeal, revoke or rescind the provisions of this section or amend or modify the same so as to limit, impair or impede the rights and remedies granted hereby; provided, however, that nothing in this section shall be deemed or construed as requiring the State to continue the payment of aid or assistance to any city, city school district or school district or as limiting or prohibiting the State from repealing or amending any law heretofore or hereafter enacted relating to aid or assistance, the manner and time of payment or apportionment thereof, or the amount thereof; and

(e) the tax contract of the State in the Act, to the effect that: "It is hereby determined that the creation of the Authority and the carrying out of its corporate purposes is in all respects for the benefit of the people of the state of New York and is a public purpose. Accordingly, the Authority shall be regarded as performing an essential governmental function in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by this title, and the Authority shall not be required to pay any fees, taxes, special ad valorem levies or assessments of any kind, including, but not limited to, franchise taxes, sales taxes or other taxes, upon or with respect to any property owned by it or under its jurisdiction, control or supervision, or upon the uses thereof, or upon or with respect to its activities or operations in furtherance of the powers conferred upon it by this title, or upon or with respect to any fares, tolls, rentals, rates, charges, fees, revenues or other income received by the Authority. Any Bonds issued pursuant to this title together with the income therefrom shall at all times be exempt from taxation. The State hereby covenants with the purchasers and with all subsequent holders and transferees of bonds issued by the Authority pursuant to this title, in consideration of the acceptance of and payment for the bonds, that the bonds of the Authority issued pursuant to this title and the income therefrom and all revenues, monies, and other property pledged to pay or to secure the payment of such bonds shall at all times be free from taxation."

*Authority Acknowledgments.* (a) The Authority acknowledges that the City's covenants and pledge and agreement for the benefit of the Holders, and the State Covenant and Tax Contract, constitute important security provisions of the Outstanding Bonds and Notes, and to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, waives any right to assert any claim to the contrary and agrees that it will neither in any manner directly or indirectly assert, nor in any manner directly or indirectly support the assertion by the City, the State or any other person of, any such claim to the contrary.

(b) By acknowledging that the City's covenants and pledge and agreement for the benefit of the Holders, and the State Covenant and Tax Contract, constitute important security provisions of the Bonds and Notes, the Authority also acknowledges, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, that, in the event of any failure or refusal by the City or the State to comply therewith, the Holders of the Bonds or Notes may

have suffered monetary damages, the extent of the remedy for which may be, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, determined, in addition to any other remedy available at law or in equity, in the course of any action taken pursuant to the Indenture; and to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, the Authority waives any right to assert any claim to the contrary and agrees that it will neither in any manner directly or indirectly assert, nor in any manner directly or indirectly support the assertion by the City, the State or any other person of, any claim to the effect that no such monetary damages have been suffered.

(c) The Authority confirms that the acknowledgments and agreements summarized forth in paragraphs (a) and (b) above have been included as a result of negotiations with the underwriters of the first series of School Bonds and may further acknowledge in any Series Resolution if and the extent to which any provision of the Indenture has been amended, or any provision of such Series Resolution has been included therein, as a result of the same or similar negotiations.

*Rights and Duties of the Fiduciaries.* The Fiduciaries shall not be required to monitor the financial condition of the Authority or the physical condition of any Project and, unless otherwise expressly provided, shall not have any responsibility with respect to reports, notices, certificates or other documents filed with them under the Indenture, except to make them available for inspection by Beneficiaries.

Upon a failure of the Authority to make a payment of Debt Service when due or a failure actually known to an Authorized Officer of the Trustee to make any other required payment within 7 days after the same becomes due and payable, the Trustee shall give written notice thereof to the Authority. The Trustee shall give notices of default when instructed to do so by the written direction of another Fiduciary or the owners of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Senior Bonds or with respect to specified events, if actually known to an Authorized Officer of the Trustee. The Trustee shall proceed under the Indenture for the benefit of the Holders in accordance with the written directions of a Majority in Interest of the Outstanding Senior Bonds. The Trustee shall not be required to take any remedial action (other than the giving of notice) unless reasonable indemnity is furnished for any expense or liability to be incurred therein.

The Trustee shall give notices of default under the City Covenant when instructed to do so by the written direction of another Fiduciary or the owners of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding School Bonds; or if the Event of Default or other event is actually known to an Authorized Officer of the Trustee. The Trustee shall proceed under the remedy provisions of the Indenture for the benefit of the Holders in accordance with the written directions of a Majority in Interest of the Outstanding School Bonds.

Upon receipt of written notice, direction or instruction and indemnity, and after making such investigation, if any, as it deems appropriate to verify the occurrence of any event of which it is notified as aforesaid, the Trustee shall promptly pursue the remedy provided by the Indenture or any such remedies (not contrary to any such direction) as it deems appropriate for the protection of the Holders, and in its actions under this sentence, the Trustee shall act for the protection of the Holders with the same promptness and prudence as would be expected of a prudent person in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

Each Fiduciary shall be entitled to the advice of counsel (who may be counsel for any party) and shall not be liable for any action taken in good faith in reliance on such advice. Each Fiduciary may rely conclusively on any notice, certificate or other document furnished to it under the Indenture and reasonably believed by it to be genuine. A Fiduciary shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and reasonably believed by it to be within the discretion or power conferred upon it, or taken by it pursuant to any direction or instruction by which it is governed under the Indenture or omitted to be taken by it by reason of the lack of direction or instruction required for such action, or be responsible for the consequences of any error of judgment reasonably made by it. When any payment or consent or other action by a Fiduciary is called for by the Indenture, the Fiduciary may defer such action pending receipt of such evidence, if any, as it may reasonably require in support thereof. A permissive right or power to act shall not be construed as a requirement to act.

The Authority shall, as an operating expense, indemnify and save each Fiduciary harmless against any expenses and liabilities (including reasonable legal fees and expenses) that it may incur in the exercise of its duties under the Indenture and that are not due to its negligence or bad faith. This paragraph shall survive the discharge of the Indenture or the earlier resignation or removal of such Fiduciary.

Any fees, expenses, reimbursements or other charges which any Fiduciary may be entitled to receive from the Authority, if not otherwise paid, shall be a first lien upon (but only upon) any funds held by the Trustee for payment of operating expenses.

*Paying Agents.* The Authority designates the Trustee a Paying Agent. The Authority may appoint additional Paying Agents, generally or for specific purposes, may discharge a Paying Agent from time to time and may appoint a successor. The Authority shall designate a successor if the Trustee ceases to serve as Paying Agent. Each Paying Agent shall be a bank or trust company eligible under the Act, and unless otherwise provided by Series Resolution, shall have a capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and be registered as a transfer agent with the Securities and Exchange Commission. The Authority shall give notice of the appointment of a successor to the Trustee as Paying Agent in writing to each Beneficiary shown on the books of the Trustee. A Paying Agent may but need not be the same person as the Trustee. Unless otherwise provided by the Authority, the Trustee as Paying Agent shall act as Bond and Note registrar and transfer agent. Each Paying Agent shall act as paying agent with respect to any allotments, apportionments or payments forwarded to it by the State pursuant to § 99-b of the State Finance Law.

*Resignation or Removal of the Trustee.* The Trustee may resign on not less than 30 days' written notice to the Authority and the Holders. The Trustee will promptly certify to the Authority that it has given written notice to all Holders and such certificate will be conclusive evidence that such notice was given as required by the Indenture. The Trustee may be removed by written notice from the Authority (if not in default) or a Majority in Interest of the Outstanding Senior Bonds to the Trustee and the Authority. Such resignation or removal shall not take effect until a successor has been appointed.

*Successor Fiduciaries.* Any corporation or association which succeeds to the municipal corporate trust business of a Fiduciary as a whole or substantially as a whole, whether by sale, merger, consolidation or otherwise, shall thereby become vested with all the property, rights, powers and duties thereof under the Indenture, without any further act or conveyance.

In case a Fiduciary resigns or is removed or becomes incapable of acting, or becomes bankrupt or insolvent, or if a receiver, liquidator or conservator of a Fiduciary or of its property is appointed, or if a public officer takes charge or control of a Fiduciary, or of its property or affairs, then such Fiduciary shall with due care terminate its activities and a successor may, or in the case of the Trustee shall, be appointed by the Authority. If no appointment of a successor Trustee is made within 45 days after the giving of written notice of resignation or after the occurrence of any other event requiring or authorizing such appointment, the outgoing Trustee or any Holder may apply to any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of such a successor, and such court may thereupon, after such notice, if any, as such court may deem proper, appoint such successor. Any successor Trustee shall be a trust company or a bank having the powers of a trust company, located in the State, having a capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000.

*No Statutory Trustee.* Pursuant to the Act, the rights of the Holders of Bonds and Notes to appoint a statutory trustee are abrogated.

*Fiduciaries for Notes and Subordinate Bonds.* The Authority may by Series Resolution provide for the appointment of a Fiduciary (which may be the Trustee) to represent the Holders of Notes or Subordinate Bonds, having powers and duties not inconsistent with the Indenture or the Act.

*Registered Owners.* The enumeration of certain provisions applicable to DTC as Holder of immobilized Notes and Bonds shall not be construed in limitation of the rights of the Authority and each Fiduciary to rely upon the registration books in all circumstances and to treat the registered owners of Notes and Bonds as the owners thereof for all purposes not otherwise specifically provided for by law or in the Indenture. Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Indenture, any payment to the registered owner of a Note or Bond shall satisfy the Authority's obligations thereon to the extent of such payment.

*Events of Default; Default.* "Event of Default" in the Indenture means any one of the events set forth below and "default" means any Event of Default without regard to any lapse of time or notice.

(a) The Authority shall fail to pay when due any interest, principal or redemption premium on a Note or Bond.

(b) The Authority shall fail to make any other required payment to the Trustee or other Fiduciary and such failure is not remedied within 7 days after written notice thereof is given by the Trustee or other Fiduciary to the Authority.

(c) The Authority shall fail to observe or perform any of its other agreements, covenants or obligations under the Indenture and such failure is not remedied within 30 days after written notice thereof is given by the Trustee to the Authority.

(d) Specified events of insolvency or bankruptcy of the Authority.

(e) The State shall (i) amend, alter, repeal or fail to comply with the State Covenant or its tax contract in the Act as in effect on the date of issuance of the first Series of Bonds or (ii) enact a moratorium or other similar law affecting the Bonds or Notes or (iii) amend, modify, repeal or otherwise alter, in any material respect, (y) the requirement of § 1313 of the Tax Law that: “The comptroller, after reserving such refund fund and such costs shall, commencing on or before the fifteenth day of each month, pay to the New York City transitional finance authority on a daily basis the balance of Personal Income Taxes” or (z) the requirement of § 2799-ii of the Act that: “To the extent that the tax revenues payable to the authority under section thirteen hundred thirteen of the tax law during such fiscal year are projected by the mayor to be insufficient to meet at least one hundred fifty percent of maximum annual debt service on authority bonds then outstanding, the mayor shall so notify the state comptroller and the state comptroller shall pay to the authority from” Alternative Revenues such amount as is necessary to provide at least 150% of the maximum annual debt service on the Bonds.

(f) The State Comptroller shall fail or refuse to comply with any provision of law in effect for the benefit of the Authority.

(g) The City shall fail to observe or perform any of its agreements, covenants or obligations under the Agreement for the benefit of the Holders and such failure is not remedied within 30 days after written notice thereof is given by the Trustee to the City and the Authority or by the Authority to the Trustee and the City.

(h) Any Officer’s Certificate delivered pursuant to paragraph (c) described in “*Accounts and Reports*” above shall show estimated Revenues to be less than 150% of Debt Service.

*Remedies of the Trustee.* If an Event of Default occurs and is continuing: (1) The Trustee may, and upon written request of the Holders of 25% in principal amount of the Senior Bonds Outstanding shall, in its own name by action or proceeding in accordance with the Civil Practice Law and Rules: (a) enforce all rights of the Holders and require the Authority or, to the extent permitted by law, the State or the City to carry out its agreements with the Holders and to perform its duties under the Act; (b) sue upon such Bonds and Notes; (c) require the Authority to account as if it were the trustee of an express trust for the Holders of such Bonds and Notes; and (d) enjoin any acts or things which may be unlawful or in violation of the rights of the Holders of such Bonds and Notes. (2) The Trustee shall, in addition, have and possess all of the powers necessary or appropriate for the exercise of any functions specifically set forth in the Act or incident to the general representation of Holders in the enforcement and protection of their rights. (3) If such Event of Default is described in clause (a), (d), (e)(iii) or (h) under “*Events of Default; Default*” above, the Trustee shall (a) give written notice thereof to the Authority, the Holders, specified public officials and public bodies so stated in the Indenture, and (b) if so directed by a Majority in Interest of the Senior Bonds, and having given 30 days’ notice to the Authority, declare the principal amount of all Bonds and Notes to be, and the same shall become, due and payable.

*Note and Subordinate Bond Remedies.* Subject to the prior application of the Accounts to pay Debt Service and to the Indenture, the Holders of Notes or Subordinate Bonds, other Beneficiaries, or a Fiduciary appointed for them, may enforce the provisions of the Indenture for their benefit by appropriate legal proceedings.

*School Bond Remedies.* To the extent not inconsistent with the Act or the Indenture as in effect prior to the issuance of the first Series of School Bonds: if (i) there occurs and is continuing any Event of Default, or (ii) the State shall amend, alter, repeal or fail to comply with its covenant respecting the Building Aid, or (iii) the City shall fail to observe or perform any of its agreements, covenants or obligations under the Assignment for the benefit of the Holders and such failure is not remedied within 30 days after written notice thereof is given by the Trustee to the City and the Authority or by the Authority to the Trustee and the City, then:

(a) The Trustee may, and upon written request of the Holders of 25% in principal amount of the School Bonds Outstanding shall, in its own name by action or proceeding in accordance with the Civil Practice Law and Rules;

(1) enforce all rights of the Holders and require the Authority or, to the extent permitted by law, the State or the City to carry out its agreements with the Holders and to perform its duties under the Act;

- (2) sue upon such Bonds and Notes;
- (3) require the Authority to account as if it were the trustee of an express trust for the Holders of such Bonds and Notes; and
- (4) enjoin any acts or things which may be unlawful or in violation of the rights of the Holders of such Bonds and Notes.

(b) The Trustee shall have and possess all of the powers necessary or appropriate for the exercise of any functions specifically set forth in the Act or incident to the general representation of Holders of School Bonds and School Notes in the enforcement and protection of their rights.

*Individual Remedies.* No one or more Holders shall by his or their action affect, disturb or prejudice the pledge created by the Indenture, or enforce any right under the Indenture, except in the manner therein provided; and all proceedings at law or in equity to enforce any provision of the Indenture shall be instituted, had and maintained in the manner provided therein and for the equal benefit of all Beneficiaries of the same class; but nothing in the Indenture shall affect or impair the right of any Holder of any Bond or Note to enforce payment of the principal thereof, premium, if any, or interest thereon at and after the maturity thereof, or the obligation of the Authority to pay such principal, premium, if any, and interest on each of the Bonds and Notes to the respective Holders thereof at the time, place, from the source and in the manner expressed in the Indenture and in the Bonds and Notes.

*Venue.* The venue of every action, suit or special proceeding against the Authority shall be laid in the County of New York.

*Waiver.* If the Trustee determines that a default has been cured before the entry of any final judgment or decree with respect to it, the Trustee may waive the default and its consequences, by written notice to the Authority, and shall do so upon written instruction of the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Senior Bonds.

*Application of Money.* If available money in the Accounts is not sufficient on any day to pay all Debt Service, Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Agreements then due or overdue, such money (subject to the payment of Bonds or Notes no longer Outstanding and to the priorities established by the Indenture) shall be applied *first* to the Trustee's fees and other costs of collecting and applying the Revenues and administering the accounts; *second* to the payment of interest, including interest on overdue principal, in the order in which the same became due (pro rata with respect to interest which became due at the same time), and if the amount available shall not be sufficient to pay in full any installment or installments of interest or obligations with respect to Senior Agreements maturing on the same date, then to the payment thereof ratably, according to the amounts due in respect of each item of Debt Service without priority or preference of any item over any other; *third* to the payment of principal (including sinking fund installments) and redemption premiums, if any, without regard to the order in which the same became due (in proportion to the amounts due), and if the amount available shall not be sufficient to pay in full all principal, premium or obligations with respect to Senior Agreements maturing on the same date, then to the payment thereof ratably, according to the amounts due in respect of each item of Debt Service without priority or preference of any item over any other and, if the amount available shall not be sufficient to pay in full all principal due on any date, then to the payment thereof ratably, according to the amounts due in respect of each item of Debt Service, without priority or preference of any Bond over any other; and *fourth* to the payment of any Notes (to the extent not paid as Debt Service), Subordinate Bonds and Subordinate Agreements then due and, if the amounts available are insufficient to pay in full all such subordinated payment obligations, then to the payment thereof ratably, in accordance with the priorities established by the Indenture but otherwise without preference or priority of any such item over any other. For this purpose, Debt Service on Senior Agreements shall be characterized in accordance with their financial terms and interest on overdue principal shall be treated as coming due on the first day of each month. Whenever money is to be applied pursuant to this provision of the Indenture, such money shall be applied at such times, and from time to time, as the Trustee in its discretion shall determine, having due regard to the amount of such money available for application and the likelihood of additional money becoming available for such application in the future. Upon the exercise of such discretion the Trustee shall fix the date (which shall be the first of a month unless it deems another date more suitable) upon which such application is to be made, and upon such date interest on the principal then provided for shall cease to accrue. The Trustee shall give such notice as it may deem appropriate of the fixing of any such date. When interest or a portion of the principal is to be paid on an overdue Bond or Note, the Trustee may require presentation of the Bond or Note for endorsement of the payment.

*Supplements and Amendments.* (a) The Indenture may be

(1) supplemented by delivery to the Trustee of an instrument certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority and executed or approved by the Mayor and Comptroller to the extent, if any, required by the Act, to (A) provide for earlier or greater deposits into the Bond Account, (B) subject any property to the lien of the Indenture, (C) add to the covenants and agreements of the Authority or surrender or limit any right or power of the Authority, (D) identify particular Notes or Bonds for purposes not inconsistent with the Indenture including credit or liquidity support, remarketing, serialization and defeasance, or (E) authorize Bonds or Notes of a Series and in connection therewith determine the matters referred to in the Indenture and any other things relative to such Bonds or Notes that are not prejudicial to the Holders, or to modify or rescind any such authorization or determination at any time prior to the first authentication and delivery of such Series of Bonds or Notes; or

(2) amended by the Authority and the Trustee with the approval of the Mayor and Comptroller to the extent, if any, required by the Act, (A) to cure any ambiguity or defect, (B) to add provisions that are not prejudicial to the Holders, (C) to adopt amendments that do not take effect unless and until (i) no Bonds or Notes Outstanding prior to the adoption of such amendment remain Outstanding or (ii) such amendment is consented to by the Holders of such Bonds or Notes in accordance with the Indenture, or (D) pursuant to paragraph (b) summarized below.

(b) Except as described in the foregoing paragraph (a), the Indenture may be amended (1) only with the written consent of a Majority in Interest of the Recovery Bonds and Bonds issued as Parity Debt, the School Bonds, the Senior Bonds and the Notes of each category (each acting as a separate class) to be Outstanding at the effective date thereof and affected thereby; but (2) only with the unanimous written consent of the affected Holders for any of the following purposes: (A) to extend the maturity of any Bond or Note, (B) to reduce the principal amount or interest rate of any Bond or Note, (C) to make any Bond or Note redeemable other than in accordance with its terms, (D) to create a preference or priority of any Bond or Note over any other Bond or Note of the same class or (E) to reduce the percentage of the Bonds and Notes required to be represented by the Holders giving their consent to any amendment. If their interests differ materially, the Holders of the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds and Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt shall vote as separate classes from the Holders of Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt and Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt.

(c) Any amendment of the Indenture shall be accompanied by a Counsel's Opinion to the effect that the amendment is permitted by law and does not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds and Tax-Exempt Notes from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

In addition, provisions of the Indenture relating to the application of the Federal Subsidy may be amended in any respect that is not prejudicial to the Bondholders.

*Beneficiaries.* The Indenture is not intended for the benefit of and shall not be construed to create rights in parties other than the City, the Authority, the Fiduciaries, the Holders of Notes and Senior Bonds, and the other Beneficiaries to the extent specified therein.

*Covenant.* The Authority covenants with (i) the Holders of the New Money Bonds to comply with the financial reporting requirements of, and to limit its issuance of bond anticipation notes as required by the Act, as in effect from time to time, and (ii) the Holders of the Refunding Bonds to limit its issuance of bond anticipation notes as required by the Act as in effect from time to time.

## THE AGREEMENT

The Agreement, including the Transitional Capital Plan attached thereto:

- (i) describes by reference to the capital budget of the City and the Act the particular Projects and Costs to be financed in whole or in part by the Authority;
- (ii) describes the plan for the financing of the Costs or Projects;
- (iii) sets forth the method for which and by whom and the terms and conditions upon which money provided by the Authority shall be distributed to the City, which disbursements shall occur, subject to receipt by the Authority of such documentation as to the costs being reimbursed as the Authority shall reasonably require, at least monthly;
- (iv) provides for the payment of such Costs by the City under such contracts as shall be awarded by the City or for the City to make a capital contribution of such proceeds as City funds to another entity for the payment or reimbursement of such Costs;
- (v) requires every contract entered into by the City, or another entity receiving funds from the City, for Projects or Costs to be financed in whole or in part by the Authority to be subject to the provisions of the City Charter and other applicable laws governing contracts of the City or such entity, as the case may be; and
- (vi) authorizes the Authority's assignment and pledge to the Trustee in trust for the benefit and security of the Bondholders and, to the extent specified in the Indenture, of Noteholders and the parties to ancillary and swap contracts of rights of the Authority under the Agreement.

In consideration of the mutual agreements contained in the Agreement and other good and valuable consideration, the Authority and the City agree as set forth in the Agreement for their own benefit and for the benefit of the Bondholders and other Beneficiaries under the Indenture.

*City's Further Assurances.* Pursuant to the Act, the City acknowledges the State's grant to the Authority and the Authority's pledge and assignment to the Trustee of, and disclaims ownership of, all subject to the terms of the Act: the City's right, title and interest in and to the Personal Income Taxes and the Sales Taxes, and all rights to receive the same and the proceeds thereof; and the City will protect and defend the Trustee's title thereto.

*Separate Accounts and Records.* The Authority and the City represent and covenant, each for itself, that:  
(a) Each of them will maintain its books, financial records and accounts (including, without limitation, inter-entity transaction accounts) in a manner so as to identify separately the assets and liabilities of each such entity; each has observed and will observe all applicable corporate procedures and formalities, including, where applicable, the holding of regular periodic and special meetings of governing bodies, the recording and maintenance of minutes of such meetings, and the recording and maintenance of resolutions, if any, adopted at such meetings; and all transactions and agreements between and among the Authority, the City and the Trustee have reflected and will reflect the separate legal existence of each entity and have been and will be formally documented in writing.  
(b) Neither the Authority nor the City has commingled or will commingle any of its assets, funds or liabilities with the assets, funds or liabilities of any other person or entity. Each of them has conducted and will conduct all business between itself and third parties in its own name and separate and distinct from the other.

*Project Fund.* A Project Fund is established to be held by the Authority. Money shall be deposited therein as provided in the Indenture. The money and investments in the Project Fund shall be held in trust and, except as otherwise provided in the Agreement, shall be applied by the Authority as described below.

The Authority shall pay from the Project Fund the Costs of Issuance, including any expenses of the City in connection with the issuance of the Bonds and Notes that are approved by the Authority, and disburse funds to the City to finance, by payment or reimbursement, Project Capital Costs. When all Costs of Issuance and Project Capital Costs have been paid or reimbursed, as evidenced by Officer's Certificates of the Authority and the City, any excess in the Project Fund shall promptly be paid to the Trustee for deposit in the Redemption Account.

The Authority and the City shall develop, and may from time to time modify, procedures for the disbursement, at least monthly, of money to the City from the Project Fund, upon terms, conditions and documentation providing for compliance with the Act, appropriate provisions of the LFL, the Transitional Capital Plan, the Agreement, the Indenture, and the advice of Counsel as to the application of proceeds of Tax-Exempt



Notes and Tax-Exempt Bonds. The City shall pay Costs out of Note and Bond proceeds under such contracts as shall be awarded by the City or make a capital contribution of such proceeds as City funds to another entity for the payment or reimbursement of such Costs.

Money in the Project Fund shall be invested and reinvested in accordance with the Act. Earnings thereon shall be transferred to the Collection Account as Building Aid or Tax Revenues, or otherwise applied in accordance with the Tax Code pursuant to an Officer's Certificate.

*Indemnity.* The City shall indemnify the Authority and hold it harmless against any claim, demand, action, liability, damages, cost, loss or expense (including, without limitation, legal fees and disbursements) that the Authority incurs arising out of or in relation to any Project.

*Limited Purpose of Agreement.* The Agreement provides for the Authority's financing of Project Capital Costs. Except as specified in the Agreement, the Authority, the City, and the Trustee shall have no liability to each other or to the Beneficiaries for the construction, reconstruction, acquisition, installation, physical condition, ownership or operation of any Project. The specific Project Capital Costs to be paid or reimbursed by the Authority shall be determined by the City in accordance with the Act.

*Covenants of the City.* The City covenants with the Authority, and consents to the pledge and assignment to the Trustee of its covenants, that:

(A) The City will at all times do and perform all acts and things permitted by law and necessary or desirable in order to assure that interest paid by the Authority on Tax-Exempt Bonds and Tax-Exempt Notes shall be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes pursuant to § 103(a) of the Code; and no funds of the City shall at any time be used directly or indirectly to acquire securities or obligations the acquisition or holding of which would cause any Tax-Exempt Bond or Tax-Exempt Note to be an arbitrage bond as defined in the Code and any applicable Regulations issued thereunder.

(B) The City in its papers and in the statements of its officials has referred and will refer to the Authority as a separate and distinct legal entity; and the City will take no action that is inconsistent with the Agreement and that would give any creditor of the City cause to believe either that any such obligations incurred by the City would be not only the obligation of the City, but also of the Authority, or that the City were not or would not continue to remain an entity separate and distinct from the Authority.

(C) To implement the State Covenant, an Authorized Officer of the City shall, not less than 30 days prior to the beginning of each City fiscal year, and as often as he deems necessary but at least quarterly thereafter, certify to the Authority and the Trustee the Mayor's projection of Personal Income Taxes payable to the Authority each month during such fiscal year; and if the projected Personal Income Taxes are insufficient to meet at least 150% of maximum annual debt service on the Bonds, as certified by the Chairperson of the Authority pursuant to the Indenture, then (1) the Mayor shall so notify the State Comptroller, and (2) an Authorized Officer of the City shall, not less than 30 days prior to the beginning of each City fiscal year in which such projected Personal Income Taxes are insufficient to meet at least 150% of such maximum annual debt service, and as often as he deems necessary but at least quarterly thereafter, certify to the Authority and the Trustee (in addition to other required matters) the City's projection of Sales Taxes available to be paid to the Authority each month during such fiscal year.

*Statutory Pledge and Agreement ("City Covenant").* The City pledges and agrees with the Holders of the Outstanding Bonds and Notes that the City will not limit or alter the rights vested in the Authority by the Act to fulfill the terms of any agreements made with such Holders pursuant to the Act, or in any way impair the rights and remedies of such Holders or the security for such Bonds and Notes until such Bonds and Notes, together with the interest thereon and all costs and expenses in connection with any action or proceeding by or on behalf of such Holders, are fully paid and discharged. This pledge and agreement shall not be deemed to restrict any right the City may have to amend, modify or otherwise alter local laws imposing or relating to the Personal Income Taxes so long as, after giving effect to such amendment, modification or other alteration, the amount of Tax Revenues projected by the Mayor to be available to the Authority during each of its fiscal years following the effective date of such amendment, modification or other alteration shall be not less than 150% of maximum annual debt service on the Bonds.

*Statutory Requirement.* To the extent required by the Act, the City agrees that it shall require every contract entered into by the City, or another entity receiving funds from the City, for projects or costs to be financed

in whole or in part by the Authority to be subject to the provisions of the City Charter and other applicable laws governing contracts of the City or such entity, as the case may be.

*Transfers to City.* Subject to the provisions of the Act and the Agreement, all money received by the Authority which, together with other money available for the purposes of the Indenture, exceeds the amount required for such purposes shall be transferred to the order of the City daily or as soon as practicable but not later than the last day of each month.

*City Acknowledgments.* (a) The City acknowledges that its covenants and pledge and agreement for the benefit of the Holders constitute important security provisions of the Bonds and Notes, and to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, waives any right to assert any claim to the contrary and agrees that it will neither in any manner directly or indirectly assert, nor in any manner directly or indirectly support any assertion of any claim to the contrary.

(b) By acknowledging that its covenants and pledge and agreement for the benefit of the Holders constitute important security provisions of the Bonds and Notes, the City also acknowledges, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, that, in the event of any failure or refusal by the City to comply therewith, the Holders of the Bonds or Notes may have suffered monetary damages, the extent of the remedy for which may be, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, determined, in addition to any other remedy available at law or in equity, in the course of any action taken pursuant to the Agreement; and to the fullest extent permitted by applicable federal and State law, the City waives any right to assert any claim to the contrary and agrees that it will neither in any manner directly or indirectly assert, nor in any manner directly or indirectly support any assertion of any claim to the effect that no such monetary damages have been suffered.

(c) The City further acknowledges that the acknowledgments and agreements described in paragraphs (a) and (b) above have been included as a result of negotiations with the underwriters of the first series of Bonds and the first Series of School Bonds and may further acknowledge if and the extent to which any provision of the Agreement has been amended, or any provision of a Series Resolution has been included therein, as a result of the same or similar negotiations.

*Amendment.* (A) The Agreement may be

(1) supplemented by delivery to the Trustee of an instrument certified by an Authorized Officer of the Authority and executed or approved by the City to the extent required by the Agreement and the Act, to (a) update the Transitional Capital Plan or (b) add to the covenants and agreements of the City or the Authority for the benefit of the Holders or surrender or limit for the benefit of the Holders any right or power of the City or the Authority; or

(2) amended by the parties with notice to the Trustee but without Bondholder or Noteholder consent to (a) cure any ambiguity or defect or (b) add provisions that are not prejudicial to the Holders of the Bonds and Notes, including provisions that do not take effect unless and until (i) no Bonds or Notes Outstanding prior to the adoption of such amendment remain Outstanding or (ii) such amendment is consented to by Holders in accordance with the further provisions of the Agreement.

(B) Except as described in the foregoing paragraph (A), the Agreement may be amended only by the City and the Authority with the written consent of a Majority in Interest of the Senior Bonds, the Recovery Bonds and Bonds issued as Parity Debt, the School Bonds and the Notes of each category (each acting as a separate class) to be Outstanding at the effective date thereof and affected thereby; but only with the unanimous written consent of the affected Holders to reduce the percentage of the Bonds and Notes required to be represented by the Holders giving their consent to any amendment. If their interests differ materially, the Holders of the Pre-07 S-1 Senior Bonds and Pre-07 S-1 Parity Debt shall vote as separate classes from the Holders of Post-07 S-1 Senior Debt and Post-07 S-1 Parity Debt.

(C) Any amendment of the Agreement shall be accompanied by a Counsel's opinion to the effect that the amendment is permitted by law and does not adversely affect the exclusion of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds and Tax-Exempt Notes from gross income for federal income tax purposes.

*Beneficiaries.* The Agreement is not intended for the benefit of and shall not be construed to create rights in parties other than the City, the Authority, the Fiduciaries, the Holders of Notes and Senior Bonds, and the other Beneficiaries to the extent specified in the Agreement and in the Indenture.

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND REPORT OF  
INDEPENDENT CERTIFIED PUBLIC  
ACCOUNTANTS

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL  
FINANCE AUTHORITY**

June 30, 2017 and 2016

(This page intentionally left blank)



# **NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**

**A COMPONENT UNIT OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK**

Financial Statements  
(Together with Independent Auditors' Report)

Years Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016

**M A R K S P A N E T H**

ACCOUNTANTS & ADVISORS

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)**

**FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
(Together with Independent Auditors' Report)**

**YEARS ENDED JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016**

**CONTENTS**

	<b><u>Page</u></b>
Independent Auditors' Report .....	1-2
Management's Discussion and Analysis (Unaudited) .....	3-12
<b>Basic Financial Statements as of and for the Years Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016:</b>	
<b>Government-wide Financial Statements</b>	
Statements of Net Position (Deficit).....	13
Statements of Activities .....	14
<b>Governmental Funds Financial Statements</b>	
Governmental Funds Balance Sheets .....	15-16
Reconciliations of the Governmental Fund Balance Sheets to the Statements of Net Position (Deficit).....	17
Governmental Funds Statements of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances .....	18-19
Reconciliations of the Governmental Funds Statements of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances to the Statements of Activities .....	20
<b>Notes to Financial Statements</b> .....	<b>21-35</b>

## INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT

To the Members of the Board of Directors of the  
New York City Transitional Finance Authority

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities of the New York City Transitional Finance Authority (the "Authority"), a component unit of The City of New York, as of and for the years ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, which collectively comprise the Authority's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents, and the related notes to the financial statements.

### *Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements*

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

### *Auditors' Responsibility*

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

### *Opinion*

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities of the New York City Transitional Finance Authority as of June 30, 2017 and 2016, and the changes in its financial position for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

*Other Matters*

*Required Supplementary Information*

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the management's discussion and analysis on pages 3 through 12 be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audits of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

*Marisa Paneth CPA*

New York, NY  
September 29, 2017



# **NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## **MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS**

**JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited)**

---

The following is a narrative overview and analysis of the financial activities of the New York City Transitional Finance Authority (the "Authority") as of June 30, 2017 and 2016 and for the years then ended. It should be read in conjunction with the Authority's government-wide financial statements, governmental funds financial statements and the notes to the financial statements. The annual financial statements consist of four parts: (1) management's discussion and analysis (this section); (2) the government-wide financial statements; (3) the governmental funds financial statements; and (4) the notes to the financial statements.

The government-wide financial statements of the Authority, which include the statements of net position (deficit) and the statements of activities, are presented to display information about the reporting entity as a whole, in accordance with Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") standards. This is to provide the reader with a broad overview of the Authority's finances. The government-wide financial statements are prepared using the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting. Accordingly, revenue is recognized when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of the related cash flows.

The Authority's governmental funds financial statements (general, capital, and debt service funds) are presented using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Revenue is recognized when it becomes susceptible to accrual, which is when it becomes both measurable and available to finance expenditures in the current fiscal period. Revenues are considered available if received within two months after the fiscal year end. Expenditures are recognized when the related liability is incurred, except for principal and interest on bonds payable and liabilities on arbitrage rebate payable, which are recognized when due.

The reconciliations of the governmental funds balance sheets to the statements of net position (deficit) and reconciliations of the governmental funds statements of revenues, expenditures and changes in fund balances to the statements of activities are presented to assist the reader in understanding the differences between government-wide and governmental funds financial statements.

### **Future Tax Secured Bonds**

The Authority's original authorizing legislation limited the amount of Authority bonds and notes issued for The City of New York's (the "City's") general capital purposes ("Future Tax Secured Bonds" or "FTS Bonds") at \$7.5 billion, (excluding Recovery Bonds, discussed below) which was amended several times to \$13.5 billion. On July 11, 2009, subsequent authorizing legislation was enacted under Chapter 182 of the Laws of New York, 2009, which permitted the Authority to have outstanding \$13.5 billion of FTS Bonds, (excluding Recovery Bonds). In addition, Chapter 182 permitted the Authority to issue additional Future Tax Secured Bonds provided that the amount of such additional bonds, together with the amount of indebtedness contracted by the City, does not exceed the debt limit of the City. At the end of fiscal year 2017, the City's and the Authority's remaining combined debt-incurring capacity was approximately \$24.0 billion. In fiscal years 2017 and 2016, the Authority issued \$5.2 billion and \$4.0 billion, respectively of FTS Bonds. The Authority had Future Tax Secured Senior Bonds outstanding of \$990 million and \$1.0 billion and Subordinate bonds (excluding Recovery Bonds) of \$31.0 billion and \$27.4 billion as of June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)

### Future Tax Secured Bonds (continued)

The Authority is authorized to have outstanding up to \$2.5 billion of bonds and notes to pay costs related to or arising from the World Trade Center attack on September 11, 2001 ("Recovery Bonds"). The Authority had Recovery Bonds outstanding as of June 30, 2017 and 2016, of \$800 million and \$906 million, respectively.

Build America Bonds ("BABs") and Qualified School Construction Bonds ("QSCBs") are taxable bonds that were created under the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 ("ARRA" or "Stimulus Act") whereby the Authority receives a cash subsidy, to pay related bond interest, from the United States Treasury. In fiscal years 2017 and 2016, the Authority recognized subsidy payments of \$53.2 million and \$53.4 million on its BABs and \$47.8 million and \$47.9 million on its QSCBs. In October 2016, subsidy payments were discounted 6.9% due to the federal government's budget sequestration. The proceeds of the BABs were used to finance the City's capital expenditures and the QSCBs proceeds were used to finance the City's educational facilities.

The following summarizes the debt service activity for FTS Bonds in fiscal year 2017:

	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2016		Issued/ Converted	Principal Retired	Principal Defeased	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2017	Total Interest Payments FY 2017
	(in thousands)						
<b>Senior FTS Bonds</b>	\$ 1,034,610	\$ -	\$ (44,550)	\$ (285)	\$ 989,775	\$ 55,808	
Subordinate FTS Bonds:							
Recovery Bonds	906,425	-	(106,260)	-	800,165	13,946	
Parity Bonds	23,248,795	5,233,595	(690,040)	(862,610)	26,929,740	910,012	
Build America Bonds	2,986,555	-	(29,565)	-	2,956,990	163,440	
Qualified School Construction Bonds	1,137,340	-	-	-	1,137,340	51,335	
<b>Subtotal - Subordinate FTS Bonds</b>	<b>28,279,115</b>	<b>5,233,595</b>	<b>(825,865)</b>	<b>(862,610)</b>	<b>31,824,235</b>	<b>1,138,733</b>	
<b>Total FTS Bonds Payable</b>	<b>\$ 29,313,725</b>	<b>\$ 5,233,595</b>	<b>\$ (870,415)</b>	<b>\$ (862,895)</b>	<b>\$ 32,814,010</b>	<b>\$ 1,194,541</b>	

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS**  
**JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)**

**Future Tax Secured Bonds (continued)**

The following summarizes the debt service activity for FTS Bonds in fiscal year 2016:

	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2015		Issued/ Converted	Principal Retired	Principal Defeased	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2016	Total Interest Payments FY 2016
	(in thousands)						
<b>Senior FTS Bonds</b>	\$ 1,287,545	\$ -	\$ (40,125)	\$ (212,810)	\$ 1,034,610	\$ 57,375	
Subordinate FTS Bonds:							
Recovery Bonds	936,115	-	(29,690)	-	906,425	11,566	
Parity Bonds	20,070,145	4,049,660	(619,890)	(251,120)	23,248,795	789,961	
Build America Bonds	2,993,200	-	(6,645)	-	2,986,555	163,677	
Qualified School Construction Bonds	1,137,340	-	-	-	1,137,340	49,260	
<b>Subtotal - Subordinate FTS Bonds</b>	<b>25,136,800</b>	<b>4,049,660</b>	<b>(656,225)</b>	<b>(251,120)</b>	<b>28,279,115</b>	<b>1,014,464</b>	
<b>Total FTS Bonds Payable</b>	<b>\$ 26,424,345</b>	<b>\$ 4,049,660</b>	<b>\$ (696,350)</b>	<b>\$ (463,930)</b>	<b>\$ 29,313,725</b>	<b>\$ 1,071,839</b>	

**Building Aid Revenue Bonds**

The Authority is also authorized to have outstanding up to \$9.4 billion of Building Aid Revenue Bonds, notes or other obligations ("BARBs"), secured by building aid from the State of New York (the "State") that is received by the Authority pursuant to an assignment with the City in fiscal year 2007 (the "Assignment"). The City assigned its building aid, which is subject to annual appropriation by the State, to the Authority for the purpose of funding costs of the five-year educational facilities capital plan for the City school system and to pay its administrative expenses. The Authority did not issue BARBs in fiscal year 2017. In fiscal year 2016, the Authority issued \$750.0 million of BARBs. BARBs outstanding as of June 30, 2017 and 2016 were \$7.9 billion and \$8.0 billion, respectively.

In fiscal years 2017 and 2016, the Authority recognized subsidy payments of \$6.5 million and \$6.5 million on its BABs and \$9.1 million and \$9.1 million on its QSCBs, respectively.

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS**  
**JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)**

**Building Aid Revenue Bonds (continued)**

The following summarizes the debt service activity for BARBs in fiscal year 2017:

	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2016		Issued/ Converted	Principal Retired	Principal Defeased	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2017	Total Interest Payments FY 2017
	(in thousands)						
Tax-exempt Bonds	\$ 7,548,005	\$ -	\$ (162,120)	\$ -	\$ 7,385,885	\$ 362,974	
Build America Bonds	295,750	-	-	-	295,750	20,018	
Qualified School Construction Bonds	200,000	-	-	-	200,000	9,800	
<b>Total BARBs Payable</b>	<b>\$ 8,043,755</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ (162,120)</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 7,881,635</b>	<b>\$ 392,792</b>	

The following summarizes the debt service activity for BARBs in fiscal year 2016:

	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2015		Issued/ Converted	Principal Retired	Principal Defeased	Outstanding Principal Balance at June 30, 2016	Total Interest Payments FY 2016
	(in thousands)						
Tax-exempt Bonds	\$ 6,930,010	\$ 750,000	\$ (132,005)	\$ -	\$ 7,548,005	\$ 324,279	
Build America Bonds	295,750	-	-	-	295,750	20,018	
Qualified School Construction Bonds	200,000	-	-	-	200,000	9,800	
<b>Total BARBs Payable</b>	<b>\$ 7,425,760</b>	<b>\$ 750,000</b>	<b>\$ (132,005)</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 8,043,755</b>	<b>\$ 354,097</b>	

In accordance with GASB standards, the building aid revenue is treated, for reporting purposes, as City revenue pledged to the Authority. Under the criteria established by GASB, the assignment of building aid revenue by the City to the Authority is considered a collateralized borrowing, due to the City's continuing involvement necessary for collection of the building aid. The Authority reports as an asset (Due from New York City — future State building aid) the cumulative amount it has distributed to the City for the educational facilities capital plan, offset by the cumulative amount of building aid it has retained. On the fund financial statements, the distributions to the City for its educational facilities capital program are reported as other financing use of funds.

The Authority retains sufficient building aid revenue to service the BARBs debt and to pay its administrative expenses in accordance with the Indenture. Building aid retained by the Authority is treated as an other financing source, as the amount retained is accounted for as a repayment of the amounts treated as loaned to the City.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)

### Building Aid Revenue Bonds (continued)

Below is a table summarizing the total building aid revenues from the State, remittances to the City and the balances retained by the Authority for the fiscal years ended June 30,

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
	-----in thousands-----		
Building aid received from New York State	\$ 1,140,203	\$ 1,094,110	\$ 1,039,395
Building aid remitted to New York City	(564,455)	(488,156)	(478,125)
Total retained for BARBs debt service and operating expenses	<u>\$ 575,748</u>	<u>\$ 605,954</u>	<u>\$ 561,270</u>

### **Financial Highlights And Overall Analysis — Government-Wide Financial Statements**

The following summarizes the activities of the Authority for the years ended June 30,

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>Variance</u>	
	-----in thousands-----			<u>2017/2016</u>	<u>2016/2015</u>
Revenues:					
Personal income tax retained	\$ 297,251	\$ 180,290	\$ 556,204	\$ 116,961	\$ (375,914)
Unrestricted grants	2,021,568	1,733,769	2,304,998	287,799	(571,229)
Federal subsidy	116,657	116,903	116,508	(246)	395
Investment earnings	5,910	8,466	2,761	(2,556)	5,705
Total revenues	<u>2,441,386</u>	<u>2,039,428</u>	<u>2,980,471</u>	<u>401,958</u>	<u>(941,043)</u>
Expenses:					
Distributions to New York City for general capital program	4,721,999	3,984,060	4,050,359	737,939	(66,299)
Interest expense	1,425,751	1,300,474	1,193,397	125,277	107,077
Other	167,033	166,459	175,919	574	(9,460)
Total expenses	<u>6,314,783</u>	<u>5,450,993</u>	<u>5,419,675</u>	<u>863,790</u>	<u>31,318</u>
Change in net position	(3,873,397)	(3,411,565)	(2,439,204)	(461,832)	(972,361)
Net position (deficit) - beginning of year	(31,150,572)	(27,739,007)	(25,299,803)	(3,411,565)	(2,439,204)
Net position (deficit) - end of year	<u>\$ (35,023,969)</u>	<u>\$ (31,150,572)</u>	<u>\$ (27,739,007)</u>	<u>\$ (3,873,397)</u>	<u>\$ (3,411,565)</u>

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)

### Financial Highlights And Overall Analysis — Government-Wide Financial Statements (continued)

In fiscal year 2017, the Authority received an unrestricted grant from the City in the amount of \$1.9 billion. These funds will be used to fund future years' debt service requirements for FTS Bonds and will reduce the amount of personal income tax ("PIT") retained for such purpose. Additionally, the Authority received a grant from Hudson Yards Infrastructure Corporation ("HYIC") in the amount of \$112.8 million. These funds were also used toward the Authority's future debt service payments. In fiscal year 2016, the Authority received an unrestricted grant from the City in the amount of \$1.7 billion. These funds were used to fund future years' debt service requirements for FTS Bonds and will reduce the amount of future PIT retained for such purpose.

In fiscal years 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Authority earned subsidy payments on its BABs and QSCBs. The subsidy revenue fluctuated in fiscal years 2017, 2016 and 2015 primarily due to changes in the discount rate due to the federal government's budget sequestration.

Investment earnings are primarily based on capital projects fund holdings, debt service fund holdings, interest rates and market value fluctuations during the fiscal year.

The amount of distributions to the City fluctuates each year depending on the capital funding needs of the City and related issuance of debt.

Interest expense increased in each fiscal year due to the increase in outstanding bonds.

Other expenses consist primarily of the Authority's administrative expenses, federal subsidies transferred to the City, and costs of issuance. The fluctuations in each fiscal year was primarily due to the changes in costs of issuance associated with the issuance of new bonds, changes in federal subsidies transferred to the City and loss on cash defeasance.

The following summarizes the Authority's assets, liabilities, and net position (deficits) as of June 30,

	2017	2016	2015	2017/2016	2016/2015
	-----in thousands-----				
Assets	\$ 10,413,900	\$ 9,462,789	\$ 9,887,032	\$ 951,111	\$ (424,243)
Deferred outflows of resources	82,287	73,446	82,477	8,841	(9,031)
Liabilities:					
Current liabilities	3,528,789	2,234,955	2,864,017	1,293,834	(629,062)
Non-current liabilities	41,991,367	38,451,852	34,844,499	3,539,515	3,607,353
Total liabilities	45,520,156	40,686,807	37,708,516	4,833,349	2,978,291
Net position:					
Restricted	203,391	12,383	64,421	191,008	(52,038)
Unrestricted	(35,227,360)	(31,162,955)	(27,803,428)	(4,064,405)	(3,359,527)
Total net position (deficit)	\$ (35,023,969)	\$ (31,150,572)	\$ (27,739,007)	\$ (3,873,397)	\$ (3,411,565)

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)

### Financial Highlights And Overall Analysis — Government-Wide Financial Statements (continued)

Total assets increased between fiscal years 2017 and 2016 primarily due to the increase in unrestricted grant received from the City and capital project funds held. Total assets decreased between fiscal years 2016 and 2015 primarily due to a decrease of approximately \$600 million in unrestricted grant received from the City.

The deferred outflows of resources represent the difference between removing the carrying amount of refunded bonds and the recording of the new bonds. The deferred outflows of resource fluctuate each year based on the amount of bonds refunded and the amortization scheduled.

Total liabilities increased in fiscal years 2017, 2016 and 2015 primarily due to the issuance of new bonds.

### Financial Highlights And Overall Analysis — Governmental Funds Financial Statements

The Authority uses five governmental funds for reporting its activities: (1) a general fund ("GF"), (2) a building aid revenue bonds capital project fund ("BARBs CPF"), (3) a future tax secured bonds capital project fund ("FTS Bonds CPF"), (4) a building aid revenue bonds debt service fund ("BARBs DSF"), and (5) a future tax secured bonds debt service fund ("FTS Bonds DSF").

The following summarizes the GF activities of the Authority for the years ended June 30,

	2017	2016	2015	Variance	
				2017/2016	2016/2015
	-----in thousands-----				
Revenues	\$ 143,439	\$ 142,323	\$ 142,355	\$ 1,116	\$ (32)
Expenditures	140,915	141,837	140,548	(922)	1,289
Other financing sources	316	380	362	(64)	18
Net change in fund balances	2,840	866	2,169	1,974	(1,303)
Fund balance - beginning of year	4,925	4,059	1,890	866	2,169
Fund balance - end of year	<u>\$ 7,765</u>	<u>\$ 4,925</u>	<u>\$ 4,059</u>	<u>\$ 2,840</u>	<u>\$ 866</u>

GF revenues fluctuate each year based on the PIT retained for administrative expenses and federal interest subsidies received. Expenditures fluctuated each year for administrative expenses and the amount of federal subsidies transferred to the City.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)

### Financial Highlights And Overall Analysis — Governmental Funds Financial Statements (continued)

The following summarizes the BARBs CPF activities of the Authority for the years ended June 30,

	2017	2016	2015	Variance	
				2017/2016	2016/2015
	-----in thousands-----				
Revenues	\$ -	\$ 355	\$ 12	\$ (355)	\$ 343
Expenditures	(60)	4,301	8,724	(4,361)	(4,423)
Other financing sources (uses)	-	4,010	8,681	(4,010)	(4,671)
Net change in fund balances	60	64	(31)	(4)	95
Fund balance - beginning of year	33	(31)	-	64	(31)
Fund balance - end of year	\$ 93	\$ 33	\$ (31)	\$ 60	\$ 64

The Authority's bond proceeds and distributions to the City are reported as other financing sources (uses) in the governmental funds. In fiscal year 2017, the Authority did not issue any BARBs. In fiscal years 2016 and 2015, BARBs proceeds were transferred/due to the City to pay certain educational facilities capital program expenditures.

The following summarizes the FTS Bonds CPF activities of the Authority for the years ended June 30,

	2017	2016	2015	Variance	
				2017/2016	2016/2015
	-----in thousands-----				
Revenues	\$ 1,766	\$ 909	\$ 1,264	\$ 857	\$ (355)
Expenditures	4,743,582	4,002,415	4,064,993	741,167	(62,578)
Other financing sources (uses)	4,932,764	3,949,404	3,160,203	983,360	789,201
Net change in fund balances	190,948	(52,102)	(903,526)	243,050	851,424
Fund balance - beginning of year	12,350	64,452	967,978	(52,102)	(903,526)
Fund balance - end of year	\$ 203,298	\$ 12,350	\$ 64,452	\$ 190,948	\$ (52,102)

CPF expenditures represent the amount of bond proceeds transferred to the City and other financing sources represent proceeds from bond issuances. Expenditures and other financing sources fluctuate each year depending on the capital funding needs of the City.



**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS**  
**JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)**

**Financial Highlights And Overall Analysis — Governmental Funds Financial Statements (continued)**

The following summarizes the BARBs DSF activities of the Authority for the years ended June 30,

	2017	2016	2015	Variance	
				2017/2016	2016/2015
	-----in thousands-----				
Revenues	\$ 598	\$ 4,712	\$ 78,292	\$ (4,114)	\$ (73,580)
Expenditures	554,912	486,102	429,643	68,810	56,459
Other financing sources (uses)	555,423	494,978	560,951	60,445	(65,973)
Net change in fund balances	1,109	13,588	209,600	(12,479)	(196,012)
Fund balance - beginning of year	875,071	861,483	651,883	13,588	209,600
Fund balance - end of year	<u>\$ 876,180</u>	<u>\$ 875,071</u>	<u>\$ 861,483</u>	<u>\$ 1,109</u>	<u>\$ 13,588</u>

Revenues in the BARBs DSF were higher in fiscal year 2015 due to the receipt of an unrestricted grant from the City. Expenditures are primarily the debt service payments on outstanding BARBs. The other financing sources (uses) consist primarily of State building aid retained by the Authority in fiscal years 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

The following summarizes the FTS Bonds DSF activities of the Authority for the years ended June 30,

	2017	2016	2015	Variance	
				2017/2016	2016/2015
	-----in thousands-----				
Revenues	\$ 2,295,677	\$ 1,890,978	\$ 2,758,627	\$ 404,699	\$ (867,649)
Expenditures	2,088,557	1,781,990	2,413,789	306,567	(631,799)
Other financing sources (uses)	67,126	114,585	(15,644)	(47,459)	130,229
Net change in fund balances	274,246	223,573	329,194	50,673	(105,621)
Fund balance - beginning of year	2,148,984	1,925,411	1,596,217	223,573	329,194
Fund balance - end of year	<u>\$ 2,423,230</u>	<u>\$ 2,148,984</u>	<u>\$ 1,925,411</u>	<u>\$ 274,246</u>	<u>\$ 223,573</u>

In fiscal years 2017 and 2016, the FTS Bonds DSF revenue primarily consisted of grants from the City and PIT retained by the Authority. The increase in fiscal year 2017 over 2016 was mainly due to a \$116 million increase of PIT retained and \$288 million more of grant revenue. The decrease in fiscal year 2016 over 2015 was mainly due to a \$376 million decrease of PIT retained and \$494 million less of grant revenue in fiscal year 2016.

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS**  
**JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016 (unaudited) (continued)**

---

**Financial Highlights And Overall Analysis — Governmental Funds Financial Statements (continued)**

Expenditures increased in fiscal year 2017 over 2016 mainly due to a \$297 million increase of principal and interest payments on FTS bonds. Expenditures decreased in fiscal year 2016 over 2015 mainly due to a \$622 million decrease of cash defeasance and a \$92 million decrease of principal payments on FTS bonds, offset by an \$84 million increase of interest payments. Other financing sources (uses) consist primarily of the proceeds from refunding and reoffering of FTS Bonds and payments of refunded FTS bonds. The amount fluctuates each year based on the size of the refunding.

This financial report is designed to provide a general overview of the Authority's finances. Questions concerning any of the information in this report or requests for additional financial information should be directed to Investor Relations, the New York City Transitional Finance Authority, 255 Greenwich Street, New York, NY 10007.

\*\*\*\*\*

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**STATEMENTS OF NET POSITION (DEFICIT)**

**AS OF JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016**

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
	<u>(in thousands)</u>	
<b>ASSETS:</b>		
Unrestricted cash and cash equivalents	\$ 90,252	\$ 8,425
Restricted cash and cash equivalents	1,806,773	269,831
Unrestricted investments	1,921,154	1,899,642
Restricted investments	746,627	871,062
Due from New York City - future State building aid	5,064,874	5,640,622
Personal income tax receivable from New York State	753,222	739,405
Federal interest subsidy receivable	30,531	30,625
Other	467	3,177
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Total assets	10,413,900	9,462,789
	<hr/>	<hr/>
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES:</b>		
Unamortized deferred bond refunding costs	82,287	73,446
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Total deferred outflows of resources	82,287	73,446
	<hr/>	<hr/>
<b>LIABILITIES:</b>		
Personal income tax payable to New York City	753,222	739,405
Distribution payable to New York City capital programs	1,050,020	6,321
Accrued expenses	4,687	4,453
Accrued interest payable	536,455	494,141
Bonds payable:		
Portion due within one year	1,184,405	990,635
Portion due after one year	41,991,367	38,451,852
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Total liabilities	45,520,156	40,686,807
	<hr/>	<hr/>
<b>NET POSITION (DEFICIT):</b>		
Restricted for capital projects	203,391	12,383
Unrestricted (deficit)	(35,227,360)	(31,162,955)
	<hr/>	<hr/>
Total net position (deficit)	\$ (35,023,969)	\$ (31,150,572)
	<hr/>	<hr/>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**STATEMENTS OF ACTIVITIES**  
**FOR THE YEARS ENDED JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016**

	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
	(in thousands)	
<b>REVENUES:</b>		
Personal income tax revenue	\$ 11,090,809	\$ 10,958,302
Less remittances to New York City	(10,793,558)	(10,778,012)
Personal income tax revenue retained	297,251	180,290
Unrestricted grants	2,021,568	1,733,769
Federal interest subsidy	116,657	116,903
Investment earnings	5,910	8,466
Total revenues	2,441,386	2,039,428
<b>EXPENSES:</b>		
General and administrative expenses	24,164	25,085
Distribution to New York City for general capital program	4,721,999	3,984,060
Distribution of federal interest subsidy to New York City	116,751	116,752
Cost of debt issuance	25,727	24,622
Interest expense	1,425,751	1,300,474
Loss on defeasance	391	-
Total expenses	6,314,783	5,450,993
Change in net position (deficit)	(3,873,397)	(3,411,565)
NET POSITION (DEFICIT) - beginning of year	(31,150,572)	(27,739,007)
NET POSITION (DEFICIT) - end of year	\$ (35,023,969)	\$ (31,150,572)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEETS**  
**AS OF JUNE 30, 2017**

(in thousands)

	(in thousands)					Total Governmental Funds
	General Fund	Capital Projects		Debt Service		
		Building Aid Revenue Bonds	Future Tax Secured	Building Aid Revenue Bonds	Future Tax Secured	
<b>ASSETS:</b>						
Unrestricted cash and cash equivalents	\$ 11,197	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 79,055	\$ 90,252
Restricted cash and cash equivalents	-	178	1,229,148	260,777	316,670	1,806,773
Restricted investments	-	-	24,915	601,161	120,551	746,627
Unrestricted investments	-	-	-	14,091	1,907,063	1,921,154
Personal income tax receivable from New York State	-	-	-	-	753,222	753,222
Other	316	-	-	467	-	783
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 11,513</b>	<b>\$ 178</b>	<b>\$ 1,254,063</b>	<b>\$ 876,496</b>	<b>\$ 3,176,561</b>	<b>\$ 5,318,811</b>
<b>LIABILITIES:</b>						
Accrued expenses	\$ 3,748	\$ 85	\$ 745	\$ 316	\$ 109	\$ 5,003
Distribution payable to New York City for capital programs	-	-	1,050,020	-	-	1,050,020
Personal income tax payable to New York City	-	-	-	-	78,222	78,222
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>3,748</b>	<b>85</b>	<b>1,050,765</b>	<b>316</b>	<b>78,331</b>	<b>1,133,245</b>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES:</b>						
Unavailable personal income tax revenue	-	-	-	-	675,000	675,000
<b>Total deferred inflows of resources</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>675,000</b>	<b>675,000</b>
<b>FUND BALANCES:</b>						
Restricted for:						
Capital distribution to New York City	-	93	203,298	-	-	203,391
Debt service	-	-	-	862,090	437,112	1,299,202
Unrestricted for:						
Assigned for debt service	-	-	-	14,090	1,986,118	2,000,208
Unassigned	7,765	-	-	-	-	7,765
<b>Total fund balances</b>	<b>7,765</b>	<b>93</b>	<b>203,298</b>	<b>876,180</b>	<b>2,423,230</b>	<b>3,510,566</b>
<b>Total liabilities, deferred inflows of resources and fund balances</b>	<b>\$ 11,513</b>	<b>\$ 178</b>	<b>\$ 1,254,063</b>	<b>\$ 876,496</b>	<b>\$ 3,176,561</b>	<b>\$ 5,318,811</b>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEETS**  
**AS OF JUNE 30, 2016**

(in thousands)

	Capital Projects		Debt Service		Total Governmental Funds	
	General Fund	Building Aid Revenue Bonds	Future Tax Secured	Building Aid Revenue Bonds		Future Tax Secured
<b>ASSETS:</b>						
Unrestricted cash and cash equivalents	\$ 8,423	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 2	\$ 8,425
Restricted cash and cash equivalents	-	223	19,056	236	250,316	269,831
Restricted investments	-	-	-	828,000	43,062	871,062
Unrestricted investments	-	-	-	44,038	1,855,604	1,899,644
Personal income tax receivable from New York State	-	-	-	-	739,405	739,405
Other	380	-	-	3,177	-	3,557
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 8,803</b>	<b>\$ 223</b>	<b>\$ 19,056</b>	<b>\$ 875,451</b>	<b>\$ 2,888,389</b>	<b>\$ 3,791,922</b>
<b>LIABILITIES:</b>						
Accrued expense payable	\$ 3,878	\$ 190	\$ 385	\$ 380	\$ -	\$ 4,833
Distribution payable to New York City for capital programs	-	-	6,321	-	-	6,321
Personal income tax payable to New York City	-	-	-	-	63,405	63,405
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>3,878</b>	<b>190</b>	<b>6,706</b>	<b>380</b>	<b>63,405</b>	<b>74,559</b>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES:</b>						
Unavailable personal income tax revenue	-	-	-	-	676,000	676,000
<b>Total deferred inflows of resources</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>676,000</b>	<b>676,000</b>
<b>FUND BALANCES:</b>						
Restricted for:						
Capital distribution to New York City	-	33	12,350	-	-	12,383
Debt service	-	-	-	831,033	293,378	1,124,411
Unrestricted for:						
Assigned for debt service	-	-	-	44,038	1,855,606	1,899,644
Unassigned	4,925	-	-	-	-	4,925
<b>Total fund balances</b>	<b>4,925</b>	<b>33</b>	<b>12,350</b>	<b>875,071</b>	<b>2,148,984</b>	<b>3,041,363</b>
<b>Total liabilities, deferred inflows of resources and fund balances</b>	<b>\$ 8,803</b>	<b>\$ 223</b>	<b>\$ 19,056</b>	<b>\$ 875,451</b>	<b>\$ 2,888,389</b>	<b>\$ 3,791,922</b>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## RECONCILIATIONS OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEETS TO THE STATEMENTS OF NET POSITION (DEFICIT) AS OF JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

	2017	2016
	(in thousands)	
Total fund balances - governmental funds	\$ 3,510,566	\$ 3,041,363
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the statements of net position (deficit) are different because:		
Bond premiums are reported as other financing sources in the governmental funds financial statements when received. However, in the statements of net position (deficit), bond premiums are reported as a component of bonds payable and amortized over the life of the bonds.	(2,480,127)	(2,085,007)
Federal Interest subsidy on BABs and QSCBs is recognized when the related bond interest is reported. On the statements of net position (deficit), the amount of the subsidy applicable to the accrued bond interest is receivable as of fiscal year end. However, in the governmental funds balance sheets where no bond interest is reported as payable until due, no subsidy receivable is reported.	30,531	30,625
BARBs proceeds are reported as an other financing sources in the governmental funds financial statements. However, in the statements of net position (deficit), they are reported as due from the City.	5,064,874	5,640,622
Some liabilities are not due and payable in the current period from financial resources available currently at year-end and are therefore not reported in the governmental funds financial statements, but are reported in the statements of net position (deficit). Those liabilities consist of:		
Bonds payable	(40,695,645)	(37,357,480)
Accrued interest payable	(536,455)	(494,141)
Costs of bond refundings are reported as expenditures in governmental funds financial statements. However, in the statements of net position (deficit), those costs and the related gain or loss are deferred and amortized over the shorter of the remaining life of the old debt or the life of the new debt.	82,287	73,446
Net position (deficit) of governmental activities	\$ (35,023,969)	\$ (31,150,572)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
STATEMENTS OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2017**

(in thousands)

						Total Governmental Funds
	General Fund	Capital Projects		Debt Service		
		Building Aid Revenue Bonds	Future Tax Secured	Building Aid Revenue Bonds	Future Tax Secured	
<b>REVENUES:</b>						
Personal income tax revenue	\$ 26,615	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 11,065,194	\$ 11,091,809
Less remittances to New York City	-	-	-	-	(10,794,558)	(10,794,558)
Personal income tax revenue retained	26,615	-	-	-	270,636	297,251
Unrestricted grants	-	-	-	-	2,021,568	2,021,568
Federal interest subsidy	116,751	-	-	-	-	116,751
Investment earnings	73	-	1,766	598	3,473	5,910
Total revenues	<u>143,439</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>1,766</u>	<u>598</u>	<u>2,295,677</u>	<u>2,441,480</u>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>						
Interest expense	-	-	-	392,792	1,194,541	1,587,333
Costs of debt issuance	-	(60)	21,583	-	-	21,523
Distributions to New York City for general capital program	-	-	4,721,999	-	-	4,721,999
Distributions of federal interest subsidy to New York City	116,751	-	-	-	-	116,751
Defeasance escrow	-	-	-	-	19,397	19,397
Principal amount of bonds retired	-	-	-	162,120	870,415	1,032,535
Refunding bond issuance costs	-	-	-	-	4,204	4,204
General and administrative expenses	24,164	-	-	-	-	24,164
Total expenditures	<u>140,915</u>	<u>(60)</u>	<u>4,743,582</u>	<u>554,912</u>	<u>2,088,557</u>	<u>7,527,906</u>
<b>Excess (deficiency) of revenues over expenditures</b>	<u>2,524</u>	<u>60</u>	<u>(4,741,816)</u>	<u>(554,314)</u>	<u>207,120</u>	<u>(5,086,426)</u>
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>						
Principal amount of bonds issued	-	-	4,400,000	-	-	4,400,000
Distributions to New York City for educational facilities capital programs	-	-	-	-	-	-
Refunding bond proceeds	-	-	-	-	833,595	833,595
Bond premium, net of discount	-	-	533,758	-	120,907	654,665
Payments of refunded bonds	-	-	-	-	(908,379)	(908,379)
Transfer from New York City - building aid	-	-	-	575,748	-	575,748
Transfers in (out)	316	-	(994)	(20,325)	21,003	-
Total other financing sources (uses)	<u>316</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>4,932,764</u>	<u>555,423</u>	<u>67,126</u>	<u>5,555,629</u>
Net changes in fund balances	2,840	60	190,948	1,109	274,246	469,203
FUND BALANCES - beginning of year	4,925	33	12,350	875,071	2,148,984	3,041,363
FUND BALANCES - end of year	<u>\$ 7,765</u>	<u>\$ 93</u>	<u>\$ 203,298</u>	<u>\$ 876,180</u>	<u>\$ 2,423,230</u>	<u>\$ 3,510,566</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.



**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
STATEMENTS OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 2016**

(in thousands)

	Capital Projects			Debt Service		Total Governmental Funds
	General Fund	Building Aid Revenue Bonds	Future Tax Secured	Building Aid Revenue Bonds	Future Tax Secured	
<b>REVENUES:</b>						
Personal income tax revenue	\$ 25,539	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 10,759,763	\$ 10,785,302
Less remittances to New York City	-	-	-	-	(10,605,012)	(10,605,012)
Personal income tax revenue retained	25,539	-	-	-	154,751	180,290
Unrestricted grants	-	-	-	-	1,733,769	1,733,769
Federal interest subsidy	116,752	-	-	-	-	116,752
Investment earnings	32	355	909	4,712	2,458	8,466
Total revenues	142,323	355	909	4,712	1,890,978	2,039,277
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>						
Interest expense	-	-	-	354,097	1,071,839	1,425,936
Costs of debt issuance	-	4,301	18,355	-	-	22,656
Distributions to New York City for general capital program	-	-	3,984,060	-	-	3,984,060
Distributions of federal interest subsidy to New York City	116,752	-	-	-	-	116,752
Defeasance escrow	-	-	-	-	11,835	11,835
Principal amount of bonds retired	-	-	-	132,005	696,350	828,355
Refunding bond issuance costs	-	-	-	-	1,966	1,966
General and administrative expenses	25,085	-	-	-	-	25,085
Total expenditures	141,837	4,301	4,002,415	486,102	1,781,990	6,416,645
<b>Excess (deficiency) of revenues over expenditures</b>	<b>486</b>	<b>(3,946)</b>	<b>(4,001,506)</b>	<b>(481,390)</b>	<b>108,988</b>	<b>(4,377,368)</b>
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>						
Principal amount of bonds issued	-	750,000	3,650,000	-	-	4,400,000
Distributions to New York City for educational facilities capital programs	-	(852,293)	-	-	-	(852,293)
Refunding bond proceeds	-	-	-	-	399,660	399,660
Bond premium, net of discount	-	106,627	301,004	-	69,671	477,302
Payments of refunded bonds	-	-	-	-	(467,266)	(467,266)
Transfer from New York City - building aid	-	-	-	605,954	-	605,954
Transfers in (out)	380	(324)	(1,600)	(110,976)	112,520	-
Total other financing sources (uses)	380	4,010	3,949,404	494,978	114,585	4,563,357
Net changes in fund balances	866	64	(52,102)	13,588	223,573	185,989
FUND BALANCES - beginning of year	4,059	(31)	64,452	861,483	1,925,411	2,855,374
FUND BALANCES - end of year	\$ 4,925	\$ 33	\$ 12,350	\$ 875,071	\$ 2,148,984	\$ 3,041,363

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

**NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY**  
(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

**RECONCILIATIONS OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENTS OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES  
AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENTS OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEARS ENDED JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016**

	2017	2016
	(in thousands)	
Net change in fund balances - total governmental funds	\$ 469,203	\$ 185,989
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the statements of activities are different because:		
Bond proceeds provide current financial resources to governmental funds financial statements but bonds issued increase long-term liabilities on the statements of net position (deficit).	(4,400,000)	(4,799,660)
Refunding bond proceeds and payments to refunded bond escrow holder are reported as other financing sources and uses in the governmental funds financial statements, but increase and decrease long-term liabilities in the statements of net position (deficit).	74,784	467,266
The governmental funds financial statements report costs of bond refundings as expenditures. However, in the statements of activities, the costs of bond refundings are amortized over the shorter of the life of the bonds refunded or the life of the bonds issued to advance refund the bonds.	(9,461)	(8,052)
Payment (including defeasance) of bond principal is an expenditure in the governmental funds financial statements, but the payment reduces long-term liabilities in the statement of net position (deficit).	1,051,932	840,190
Payments to defease bonds prior to maturity are reported as expenditures in the governmental funds financial statements. However, in the statements of net position (deficit), only the difference between the carrying value of the defeased bonds and the amount paid to defease the bonds are reported as period revenues or expenses.	(391)	-
The governmental funds financial statements report bond premiums/discounts as other financing sources/uses. However, in the statements of activities, bond premiums/discounts are amortized over the lives of the related debt as interest expense.	(425,597)	(277,983)
Distributions to the City's educational facilities capital program from BARBs proceeds are reported as an other financing use in governmental funds financial statements. However, in the statements of net position (deficit), distributions of BARBs proceeds are reported as due from New York City-future State building aid.	-	852,293
Retention of building aid is reported similar to a transfer from the City, as an other financing source in the governmental funds financial statements. However, in the statements of activities, building aid retained is reported as a reduction of the amount due from New York City-future State building aid.	(575,748)	(605,954)
Federal interest subsidy on BABs and QSCBs is recognized when the related bond interest cost is reported. On the statement of activities, the subsidy revenue in the amount applicable to the accrued bond interest expense is accrued as of fiscal year end. However, in the governmental funds financial statements where interest expenditure is reported when due, no subsidy revenue is accrued as of year end.	(94)	151
Interest is reported on the statement of activities on the accrual basis. However, interest is reported as an expenditure in the governmental funds financial statements when the outlay of financial resources is due.	(58,025)	(65,805)
Change in net position (deficit) - governmental activities	\$ (3,873,397)	\$ (3,411,565)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 1. Organization And Nature Of Activities

The New York City Transitional Finance Authority (the “Authority”) is a corporate governmental entity constituting a public benefit corporation and an instrumentality of the State of New York (the “State”). The Authority is governed by a Board of five directors, consisting of the following officials of The City of New York (the “City”): the Director of Management and Budget (who also serves as Chairperson), the Commissioner of Finance, the Commissioner of Design and Construction, the City Comptroller, and the Speaker of the City Council. Although legally separate from the City, the Authority is a financing instrumentality of the City and is included in the City’s financial statements as a blended component unit, in accordance with the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (“GASB”) standards.

The Authority was created by State legislation enacted in 1997 to issue and sell bonds and notes (“Future Tax Secured Bonds” or “FTS Bonds”) to fund a portion of the capital program of the City, the purpose of which is to maintain, rebuild and expand the infrastructure of the City, and to pay the Authority’s administrative expenses.

The Authority’s original authorizing legislation limited the amount of Authority bonds and notes issued for the City’s general capital purposes (FTS Bonds) at \$7.5 billion, (excluding Recovery Bonds, discussed below) which was amended several times to \$13.5 billion. On July 11, 2009, subsequent authorizing legislation was enacted under Chapter 182 of the Laws of New York, 2009, which permitted the Authority to have outstanding \$13.5 billion of FTS Bonds (excluding Recovery Bonds). In addition, Chapter 182 permitted the Authority to issue additional Future Tax Secured Bonds provided that the amount of such additional bonds, together with the amount of indebtedness contracted by the City, does not exceed the debt limit of the City. At the end of fiscal year 2017, the City’s and the Authority’s remaining combined debt incurring capacity was approximately \$24.0 billion. On September 13, 2001, the State Legislature authorized the Authority to have outstanding an additional \$2.5 billion of bonds and notes (“Recovery Bonds”) to fund the City’s costs related to and arising from events on September 11, 2001 at the World Trade Center, notwithstanding the limits discussed above.

State legislation enacted in April 2006 enabled the Authority to have outstanding up to \$9.4 billion of Building Aid Revenue Bonds (“BARBs”), notes or other obligations for purposes of funding costs of the five-year educational facilities capital plan for the City school system and the Authority’s administrative expenses.

The Authority does not have any employees; its affairs are administered by employees of the City and of another component unit of the City, for which the Authority pays a management fee and overhead based on its allocated share of personnel and overhead costs.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 2. Summary Of Significant Accounting Policies

- A. The government-wide financial statements of the Authority, which include the statements of net position (deficit) and the statements of activities, are presented to display information about the reporting entity as a whole, in accordance with Governmental Accounting Standard Board (“GASB”) standards. The statements of net position (deficit) and the statements of activities are prepared using the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of the related cash flows.

The Authority’s governmental funds financial statements (general, capital projects and debt service funds) are presented using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Revenue is recognized when it becomes susceptible to accrual, which is when it becomes both measurable and available to finance expenditures in the current fiscal period. Revenues are considered available if received within two months after the fiscal year end. Expenditures are recognized when the related liability is incurred, except for principal and interest on bonds payable and liabilities on arbitrage rebate payable, which are recognized when due.

The Authority uses five governmental funds for reporting its activities: (1) a general fund (“GF”), (2) a building aid revenue bonds capital projects fund (“BARBs CPF”), (3) a future tax secured bonds capital projects fund (“FTS Bonds CPF”), (4) a building aid revenue bonds debt service fund (“BARBs DSF”), and (5) a future tax secured bonds debt service fund (“FTS Bonds DSF”). The two capital project funds account for resources to be transferred to the City’s capital programs in satisfaction of amounts due to the City and the two debt service funds account for the accumulation of resources for payment of principal and interest on outstanding debts. The general fund accounts for and reports all financial resources not accounted for in the capital and debt service funds, including the Authority’s administrative expenses.

- B. Fund balances are classified as either: 1) nonspendable, 2) restricted, or 3) unrestricted. Unrestricted fund balance is further classified as: (a) committed, (b) assigned, or (c) unassigned.

Fund balance that cannot be spent because it is not in spendable form is defined as nonspendable. Resources constrained for debt service or redemption in accordance with TFA’s Trust Indenture, (the “Indenture”) are classified as restricted on the statements of net position (deficit) and the governmental funds balance sheets.

The Board of Directors of the Authority (the “Board”) constitutes the Authority’s highest level of decision-making authority and resolutions adopted by the Board that constrain fund balances for a specific purpose are accounted for and reported as committed for such purpose unless and until a subsequent resolution altering the commitment is adopted by the Board.

Fund balances which are constrained for use for a specific purpose based on the direction of any officer of the Authority duly authorized under its bond indenture to direct the movement of such funds are accounted for and reported as assigned for such purpose, unless or until a subsequent authorized action by the same or another duly authorized officer, or by the Board, is taken which removes or changes the assignment. Authorized officers allowed to assign funds are comprised of the Executive Director, Comptroller, Treasurer, Secretary, Deputy Comptroller, Assistant Secretaries

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 2. Summary Of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

and Assistant Treasurer. When both restricted and unrestricted resources are available for use for a specific purpose, it is the Authority's policy to use restricted resources first then unrestricted resources as they are needed. When committed, assigned, or unassigned resources are available for use for a specific purpose, it is the Authority's policy to use committed resources first, then assigned resources, and then unassigned resources as they are needed.

Resources constrained for debt service or redemption in accordance with the Authority's Indenture are classified as restricted on the statements of net position (deficit) and the governmental funds balance sheets.

- C. Bond and bond anticipation note premiums and discounts are capitalized and amortized over the lives of the related debt using the interest method in the government-wide financial statements. The governmental funds financial statements recognize the premiums and discounts, as well as debt issuance costs, during the current period. Bond premiums and discounts are presented as additions or reductions to the face amount of the bonds payable. Bond issuance costs are recognized in the period incurred both on the government-wide and governmental funds financial statements.
- D. Deferred bond refunding costs represent the accounting loss incurred in a current or advance refunding of outstanding bonds and are reported as a deferred outflow of resources on the government-wide financial statements. The deferred bond refunding costs are amortized over the shorter of the remaining life of the old debt or the life of the new debt. In the governmental funds financial statements, costs of the bond refunding are reported as expenditures when incurred.
- E. Interest expense is recognized on the accrual basis in the government-wide financial statements. Interest expenditures are recognized when bond interest is due in the governmental funds financial statements.
- F. The Authority receives the City personal income taxes, imposed pursuant to the State law and collected on behalf of the Authority by the State, to service its future tax secured debt and pay a portion of its administrative expenses. Funds for FTS Bonds debt service are required to be set aside prior to the due date of the principal and interest. Personal income taxes in excess of amounts needed to pay debt service and administrative expenses of the Authority are available to be remitted to the City. In fiscal years 2017 and 2016, the Authority received unrestricted grants for future debt service payments and reduced the amount of PIT retained for such purpose as described in Note 6.
- G. The Authority receives building aid payments by the State, subject to State annual appropriation, pursuant to the assignment by the City of the building aid payments to the Authority to service its building aid revenue bonds and pay a portion of its administrative expenses. Due to the City's continuing involvement necessary for the collection of the building aid, this assignment is considered a collateralized borrowing between the City and the Authority pursuant to GASB standards. The Authority reports, on its statements of net position (deficit), an asset (Due from New York City — future State building aid) representing the cumulative amount it has distributed to the City for the educational facilities capital plan, net of the cumulative amount of building aid it has retained. On the fund financial statements, the distributions to the City for its educational facilities

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 2. Summary Of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

capital program are reported as an other financing use of funds. Building aid retained by the Authority is treated as an other financing source as the amount retained is accounted for as a repayment of the amounts loaned to the City. During the years ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority retained \$576 million and \$606 million, respectively, of State building aid to be used for BARBs debt service and its administrative expenses.

- H. To maintain the exemption from Federal income tax of interest on bonds issued by the Authority, the Authority will fund amounts required to be rebated to the Federal government pursuant to Section 148 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"). The Code requires the payment to the United States Treasury of the excess of the amount earned on all obligations over the amount that would have been earned if the gross proceeds of the issue were invested at a rate equal to the yield on the issue, together with any earnings attributable to such excess. Construction funds, debt service funds or any other funds or accounts funded with proceeds of such bonds, including earnings, or pledged to or expected to be used to pay interest on such bonds are subject to this requirement. Payment is to be made after the end of the fifth bond year and after every fifth bond year thereafter, and within 60 days after retirement of the bonds. The Authority was not required to make an arbitrage rebate payment in fiscal years 2017 and 2016.

The Authority receives a subsidy from the United States Treasury due to the Authority's issuance of taxable Build America Bonds ("BABs") and taxable Qualified School Construction Bonds ("QSCBs") under the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009. This subsidy is recognized when the related bond interest is reported. On the statements of net position, the amount of the subsidy related to the accrued bond interest is reported as a receivable at year end, while in the governmental funds balance sheets where no bond interest is reported as payable until due, no subsidy receivable is reported.

#### I. Recent Accounting Pronouncements:

As a component unit of the City, the Authority implements new GASB standards in the same fiscal year as they are implemented by the City. The following are discussions of the standards requiring implementation in the current year and standards which may impact the Authority in future years.

- In June 2015, GASB issued Statement No. 74, *Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefit Plans Other Than Pension Plans* ("GASB 74"). GASB 74 establishes financial reporting standards for state and local governmental other postemployment benefit ("OPEB") plans. The requirements of GASB 74 are effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2016. The adoption of GASB 74 did not have an impact on TFA's financial statements, as TFA is not an OPEB Plan.
- In June 2015, GASB issued Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions* ("GASB 75"). GASB 75 establishes accounting and financial reporting standards for OPEB that is provided to employees of state and local governmental employees. The requirements of GASB 75 are effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2017. The adoption of GASB 75 did not have an impact on TFA's financial statements, as it has no employees.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 2. Summary Of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

- In November 2016, GASB issued Statement No. 83, *Certain Asset Retirement Obligations*, (“GASB 83”). GASB 83 addresses accounting and financial reporting for certain asset retirement obligations. This statement establishes criteria for determining the timing and pattern of recognition of a liability and corresponding deferred outflow of resources for asset retirement obligations. The requirements of GASB 83 are effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2018. TFA has not completed the process of evaluating GASB 83, but does not expect it to have an impact on TFA’s financial statements.
- In January 2017, GASB issued Statement No. 84, *Fiduciary Activities*, (“GASB 84”). The objective of GASB 84 is to improve guidance regarding the identification of fiduciary activities for accounting and financial reporting purposes and how those activities should be reported. The requirements of GASB 84 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. TFA has not completed the process of evaluating GASB 84, but does not expect it to have an impact on TFA’s financial statements, as it does not enter in fiduciary activities.
- In March 2017, GASB issued Statement No. 85, *Omnibus 2017*, (“GASB 85”). The objective of GASB 85 is to address practice issues that have been identified during implementation and application of certain GASB statements. The requirements of GASB 85 are effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2017. The adoption of GASB 85 did not have an impact on TFA’s financial statements.
- In May 2017, GASB issued Statement No. 86, *Certain Debt Extinguishment Issues*, (“GASB 86”). The primary objective of GASB 86 is to improve consistency in accounting and financial reporting for in-substance defeasance of debt by providing guidance for transactions in which cash and other monetary assets are acquired with only existing resources – resources other than the proceeds of refunding debt. This statement also improves accounting and financial reporting for prepaid insurance on debt that is extinguished. The requirements of GASB 86 are effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2017. TFA has not completed the process of evaluating GASB 86, but does not expect it to have an impact on TFA’s financial statements.
- In June 2017, GASB issued Statement No. 87, *Leases*, (“GASB 87”). The objective of GASB 87 is to improve accounting and financial reporting for leases by governments. This statement increases the usefulness of governments’ financial statements by requiring recognition of certain lease assets and liabilities for leases that previously were classified as operating leases and recognized as inflows of resources or outflows of resources based on the payment provisions of the contract. It establishes a single model for lease accounting based on the foundational principle that leases are financings of the right to use an underlying asset. Under this statement, a lessee is required to recognize a lease liability and an intangible right-to-use lease asset, and a lessor is required to recognize a lease receivable and a deferred inflow of resources, thereby enhancing the relevance and consistency of information about governments’ leasing activities. TFA has not completed the process of evaluating GASB 87, but does not expect it to have an impact on TFA’s financial statements, as it does not enter into any lease agreements.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 2. Summary Of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

J. The preparation of financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires the Authority's management to make estimates and assumptions in determining the reported amounts of assets, deferred outflow of resources, liabilities and deferred inflow of resources, disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the financial statements, and the reported amounts of revenues and expenditures/expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

### 3. Cash And Cash Equivalents

The Authority's cash and cash equivalents as of June 30, 2017 and 2016 were as follows:

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
	(in thousands)	
<b>Restricted cash and cash equivalents:</b>		
Cash	\$ 7	\$ 2
Cash equivalents (see Note 4)	<u>1,806,766</u>	<u>269,829</u>
<b>Total restricted cash and cash equivalents</b>	<u>1,806,773</u>	<u>269,831</u>
<b>Unrestricted cash and cash equivalents:</b>		
Cash	193	247
Cash equivalents (see Note 4)	<u>90,059</u>	<u>8,178</u>
<b>Total unrestricted cash and cash equivalents</b>	<u>90,252</u>	<u>8,425</u>
<b>Total cash and cash equivalents</b>	<u>\$ 1,897,025</u>	<u>\$ 278,256</u>

As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority's restricted cash and cash equivalents consisted of bank deposits, money market funds, U.S. Treasuries, and securities of government sponsored enterprises held by the Authority's Trustee in the Trustee's name.

As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority's unrestricted cash and cash equivalents consisted of bank deposits, money market funds and securities of government sponsored enterprises held by the Authority's Trustee in the Trustee's name.

As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the carrying amounts and bank balances of bank deposits were \$200 thousand and \$249 thousand, respectively. These deposits were covered by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

The Authority's investments classified as cash equivalents included U.S. Government Securities and Commercial Paper that have an original maturity date of 90 days or less from the date of purchase. The Authority values those investments at fair value (see Note 4 below for a discussion of the Authority's investment policy).



# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

### 4. Investments

Each account of the Authority that is held pursuant to the Indenture between the Authority and its Trustee, as amended and as restated December 1, 2010, (the "Indenture") may be invested in securities or categories of investments that are specifically enumerated as permitted investments for such account pursuant to the Indenture.

The Authority's investments, including cash equivalents, as of June 30, 2017 and 2016 were as follows:

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
	(in thousands)	
<b>Restricted investments and cash equivalents:</b>		
Money market funds	\$ 11,336	\$ 3,886
Federal Home Loan Bank discount notes (Maturing within one year)	830,054	449,329
Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation discount notes (Maturing within one year)	170,934	568,637
Federal National Mortgage Association discount notes (Maturing within one year)	139,208	60,440
U.S. Treasuries (Maturing within one year)	93,259	-
U.S. Treasuries (Maturing within five to ten years)	55,404	40,018
Commercial paper (Maturing within one year)	<u>1,253,198</u>	<u>18,581</u>
<b>Total restricted investments and cash equivalents</b>	2,553,393	1,140,891
Less: amounts reported as restricted cash equivalents	<u>(1,806,766)</u>	<u>(269,829)</u>
<b>Total restricted investments</b>	<u>\$ 746,627</u>	<u>\$ 871,062</u>
<b>Unrestricted investments and cash equivalents:</b>		
Money market funds	\$ 11,038	\$ 8,178
Federal Home Loan Bank discount notes (Maturing within one year)	1,056,362	537,633
Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation discount notes (Maturing within one year)	929,722	733,436
Federal National Mortgage Association discount notes (Maturing within one year)	<u>14,091</u>	<u>628,573</u>
<b>Total unrestricted investments and cash equivalents</b>	2,011,213	1,907,820
Less: amounts reported as unrestricted cash equivalents	<u>(90,059)</u>	<u>(8,178)</u>
<b>Total unrestricted investments</b>	<u>\$ 1,921,154</u>	<u>\$ 1,899,642</u>

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 4. Investments (continued)

#### Fair Value Hierarchy

The Authority categorizes its fair value measurements within the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The hierarchy is based on the valuation inputs used to measure fair value of the assets. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in an active market for identical assets; Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs; and Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs.

The Authority has the following recurring fair value measurements as of June 30, 2017 and 2016:

- Money Market Funds of \$22.4 million and \$12.1 million, respectively, are valued based on various market and industry inputs (Level 2 inputs).
- U.S. Treasury securities of \$148.7 million and \$40.0 million, respectively, are valued using quoted market prices (Level 1 inputs).
- U.S. Agencies securities of \$3.1 billion and \$3.0 billion, respectively, are valued using a matrix pricing model (Level 2 inputs).
- Commercial paper of \$1.3 billion and \$18.6 million, respectively, are valued using a matrix pricing model (Level 2 inputs).

**Custodial Credit Risk** — Is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the custodian, the Authority may not be able to recover the value of its investments or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. All investments are held in the Trustee's name by the Trustee.

**Credit Risk** — The Authority's investments are primarily government-sponsored enterprise discount notes and commercial paper. All commercial paper held by the Authority is non-asset backed commercial paper and is rated A1+ by Standard Poor's Rating Services and P1 by Moody's Investor Services.

**Interest Rate Risk** — Substantially all of the Authority's investments mature in one year or less. Investments with longer term maturities are not expected to be liquidated prior to maturity, thereby limiting exposure from rising interest rates.

**Concentration of Credit Risk** — Concentration of credit risk is the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of TFA's investments in a single issuer (5% or more). TFA's investment policy places no limit on the amount TFA may invest in any one issuer of eligible government obligations as defined in the Indenture. As of June 30, 2017, TFA's investments were in eligible U.S. Government sponsored entities and commercial paper. These are 73% and 27% of TFA total investments, respectively.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

### 5. Long-Term Liabilities

Pursuant to the New York City Transitional Finance Authority Act (the “Act”), as amended, the Authority is authorized to have outstanding \$13.5 billion of FTS Bonds, excluding Recovery Bonds. In addition, Chapter 182 permits the Authority to issue additional Future Tax Secured Bonds provided that the amount of such additional bonds, together with the amount of indebtedness contracted by the City, does not exceed the debt limit of the City. As of June 30, 2017, the City’s and the Authority’s remaining combined debt-incurring capacity was approximately \$24.0 billion. The Authority is also authorized to have outstanding \$2.5 billion of Recovery Bonds and notes to pay costs related to or arising from the World Trade Center attack on September 11, 2001.

The Indenture permits the Authority to issue Senior and Subordinate FTS Bonds which consists of Recovery Bonds, Build America Bonds, Qualified School Construction Bonds, and other parity debt. As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority had \$989.8 million and \$1.0 billion, respectively, of Senior bonds outstanding. The Authority is authorized to issue Senior FTS Bonds in an amount not to exceed \$12 billion in outstanding principal and subject to a \$330 million limit on quarterly debt service. Subordinate FTS Bonds outstanding as of June 30, 2017 and 2016, were \$31.8 billion and \$28.3 billion, respectively. Total FTS Bonds outstanding at June 30, 2017 and 2016, were \$32.8 billion and \$29.3 billion, respectively.

In fiscal year 2017, the changes in FTS long-term debt were as follows:

	Balance at June 30, 2016	Additions	Deletions	Balance at June 30, 2017
		(in thousands)		
<b>Senior FTS Bonds</b>	\$ 1,034,610	\$ -	\$ (44,835)	\$ 989,775
Subordinate FTS Bonds:				
Recovery Bonds	906,425	-	(106,260)	800,165
Parity Bonds	23,248,795	5,233,595	(1,552,650)	26,929,740
Build America Bonds	2,986,555	-	(29,565)	2,956,990
Qualified School Construction Bonds	1,137,340	-	-	1,137,340
<b>Subtotal - Subordinate FTS Bonds</b>	28,279,115	5,233,595	(1,688,475)	31,824,235
<b>Total before premiums/discounts (net)</b>	29,313,725	5,233,595	(1,733,310)	32,814,010
Premiums/(discounts)(net)	1,620,813	654,664	(229,243)	2,046,234
<b>Total FTS Bonds Payable</b>	<b>\$ 30,934,538</b>	<b>\$ 5,888,259</b>	<b>\$ (1,962,553)</b>	<b>\$ 34,860,244</b>
Due within one year				<u>\$ 1,000,260</u>

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

### 5. Long-Term Liabilities (continued)

In fiscal year 2016, the changes in FTS long-term debt were as follows:

	Balance at June 30, 2015	Additions	Deletions	Balance at June 30, 2016
	(in thousands)			
<b>Senior FTS Bonds</b>	\$ 1,287,545	\$ -	\$ (252,935)	\$ 1,034,610
Subordinate FTS Bonds:				
Recovery Bonds	936,115	-	(29,690)	906,425
Parity Bonds	20,070,145	4,049,660	(871,010)	23,248,795
Build America Bonds	2,993,200	-	(6,645)	2,986,555
Qualified School Construction Bonds	1,137,340	-	-	1,137,340
<b>Subtotal - Subordinate FTS Bonds</b>	25,136,800	4,049,660	(907,345)	28,279,115
<b>Total before premiums/discounts (net)</b>	26,424,345	4,049,660	(1,160,280)	29,313,725
Premiums/(discounts)(net)	1,434,301	370,675	(184,163)	1,620,813
<b>Total FTS Bonds Payable</b>	<u>\$ 27,858,646</u>	<u>\$ 4,420,335</u>	<u>\$ (1,344,443)</u>	<u>\$ 30,934,538</u>
Due within one year				<u>\$ 828,515</u>

As of June 30, 2017, the interest rates on the Authority's outstanding FTS fixed rate bonds ranged from 1.00% to 5.50% on tax-exempt bonds and .90% to 6.27% on taxable bonds.

The Authority funds its debt service requirements for all FTS Bonds and its administrative expenses from personal income taxes collected on its behalf by the State and, under certain circumstances if it were necessary, sales taxes. Sales taxes are only available to the Authority if the amounts of personal income tax revenues fall below statutorily specified debt service coverage levels. No sales tax revenues were received or required during the fiscal years ended June 30, 2017 and 2016. The Authority remits any excess personal income tax not required for its debt service payments and its administrative expenses to the City. The Authority has no taxing power.

On June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority had \$4.2 billion and \$4.2 billion, respectively, of FTS variable rate bonds outstanding, consisting of \$222.4 million of Auction Rate Securities ("ARS"), \$610.9 million and \$434.2 million, respectively, of Index Rate Bonds, and \$3.4 billion and \$3.6 billion, respectively, of Variable Rate Demand Bonds ("VRDBs"). The interest rate on the ARSs is established weekly by an auction agent at the lowest clearing rate based upon bids received from broker dealers. The interest rate on the ARS cannot exceed 12%. In fiscal years 2017 and 2016, the interest rate on the ARS averaged .84% and .46%, respectively, and on the Index Rate Bonds 1.34% and .79%, respectively. The Authority's Index Rate Bonds pay interest based on a specified index. Such bonds also provide for an increased rate of interest commencing on an identified step up date if such bonds are not converted or

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

### 5. Long-Term Liabilities (continued)

refunded. The VRDBs bear a daily rate, a two day rate or a weekly rate and represent the lowest rate of interest that would cause the adjustable rate bonds to have a market value equal to the principal amount. The rates cannot exceed 9% on tax exempt bonds and 12% on taxable bonds. In fiscal years 2017 and 2016, the VRDB rates averaged .77% and .21%, respectively, on tax exempt bonds.

During fiscal year 2017, the Authority issued \$794.6 million of FTS bonds to refund \$862.9 million of outstanding FTS bonds. This refunding resulted in an accounting loss of \$18.3 million. The Authority in effect reduced its aggregate debt service by \$99.2 million and obtained an economic benefit of \$85.0 million.

During fiscal year 2016, the Authority issued \$400.0 million of FTS bonds to refund \$463.9 million of outstanding FTS bonds. This refunding resulted in an accounting gain of \$978.9 thousand. The Authority in effect reduced its aggregate debt service by \$67.8 million and obtained an economic benefit of \$63.2 million.

The bonds refunded with defeasance collateral have been removed from the financial statements as a liability of the Authority. As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority had FTS Bonds refunded with defeasance collateral totaling \$13.7 billion and \$12.9 billion, respectively, of which \$1.3 billion and \$1.6 billion, respectively, are still to be paid from the defeasance collateral held in the escrow accounts on deposit with the Authority's escrow Trustee.

Debt service requirements as of June 30, 2017, for FTS Bonds, including Recovery Bonds, payable to their maturity are as follows:

	<b>SENIOR</b>		<b>SUBORDINATE</b>		<b>Total</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>Total</b>
	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest (a)</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest (a)</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Debt Service</u>
	(in thousands)						
Year ending June 30,							
2018	\$ 3,350	\$ 8,392	\$ 1,008,220	\$ 1,296,690	\$ 1,011,570	\$ 1,305,082	\$ 2,316,652
2019	12,940	7,999	1,370,740	1,268,783	1,383,680	1,276,782	2,660,462
2020	3,380	7,598	1,359,980	1,219,610	1,363,360	1,227,208	2,590,568
2021	-	7,509	1,411,725	1,170,030	1,411,725	1,177,539	2,589,264
2022	-	7,509	1,441,385	1,118,708	1,441,385	1,126,217	2,567,602
2023 to 2027	368,940	33,078	6,569,520	4,826,449	6,938,460	4,859,527	11,797,987
2028 to 2032	601,165	8,147	6,077,245	3,437,905	6,678,410	3,446,052	10,124,462
2033 to 2037	-	-	6,107,190	2,066,562	6,107,190	2,066,562	8,173,752
2038 to 2042	-	-	5,316,105	645,675	5,316,105	645,675	5,961,780
2043 to 2045	-	-	1,162,125	28,676	1,162,125	28,676	1,190,801
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 989,775</b>	<b>\$ 80,232</b>	<b>\$31,824,235</b>	<b>\$17,079,088</b>	<b>\$32,814,010</b>	<b>\$17,159,320</b>	<b>\$49,973,330</b>

(a) The variable interest rates used in this table were .77% on tax-exempt bonds and .84% on auction bonds.

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 5. Long-Term Liabilities (continued)

In addition to the Authority's authorization to issue FTS Bonds, State legislation enacted in April 2006 enables the Authority to have outstanding up to \$9.4 billion of BARBs, notes or other obligations for purposes of funding costs of the five-year educational facilities capital plan for the City's school system and certain administrative expenditures. As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority had \$7.9 billion and \$8.0 billion, respectively, of BARBs outstanding.

Under this legislation, the BARBs are secured by the State building aid payable by the State and assigned to the Authority by the City. These State aid payments are subject to annual appropriation from the State. In accordance with the legislation and the Indenture, BARBs' bond holders do not have any right to the personal income tax revenues or sales tax revenues.

In fiscal year 2017, the changes in BARBs long-term debt were as follows:

	Balance at <u>June 30, 2016</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Deletions</u>	Balance at <u>June 30, 2017</u>
		(in thousands)		
Tax-exempt Bonds	\$ 7,548,005	\$ -	\$ (162,120)	\$ 7,385,885
Build America Bonds	295,750	-	-	295,750
Qualified School Construction Bonds	200,000	-	-	200,000
<b>Total before premiums/discounts (net)</b>	<b>8,043,755</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>(162,120)</b>	<b>7,881,635</b>
Premiums/(discounts)(net)	464,194	-	(30,301)	433,893
<b>Total BARBs Payable</b>	<b>\$ 8,507,949</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ (192,421)</b>	<b>\$ 8,315,528</b>
Due within one year				<u>\$ 184,145</u>

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

### 5. Long-Term Liabilities (continued)

In fiscal year 2016, the changes in BARBs long-term debt were as follows:

	<u>Balance at June 30, 2015</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Deletions</u>	<u>Balance at June 30, 2016</u>
		(in thousands)		
Tax-exempt Bonds	\$ 6,930,010	\$ 750,000	\$ (132,005)	\$ 7,548,005
Build America Bonds	295,750	-	-	295,750
Qualified School Construction Bonds	200,000	-	-	200,000
<b>Total before premiums/discounts (net)</b>	<b>7,425,760</b>	<b>750,000</b>	<b>(132,005)</b>	<b>8,043,755</b>
Premiums/(discounts)(net)	388,448	106,626	(30,880)	464,194
<b>Total BARBs Payable</b>	<b>\$ 7,814,208</b>	<b>\$ 856,626</b>	<b>\$ (162,885)</b>	<b>\$ 8,507,949</b>
Due within one year				<u>\$ 162,120</u>

As of June 30, 2017 the interest rates on the Authority's outstanding BARBs fixed rate bonds ranged from 2.0% to 6.0% on tax-exempt bonds and 4.80% to 7.13% on taxable bonds.

Debt service requirements at June 30, 2017 for BARBs payable to maturity are as follows:

	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Total</u>
		(in thousands)	
Year ending June 30,			
2018	\$ 191,120	\$ 391,066	\$ 582,186
2019	199,260	382,705	581,965
2020	210,300	373,808	584,108
2021	219,805	363,964	583,769
2022	232,425	353,469	585,894
2023 to 2027	1,373,780	1,581,350	2,955,130
2028 to 2032	1,726,900	1,187,300	2,914,200
2033 to 2037	2,173,160	689,713	2,862,873
2038 to 2042	1,219,395	203,192	1,422,587
2043 to 2046	335,490	20,533	356,023
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 7,881,635</b>	<b>\$ 5,547,100</b>	<b>\$ 13,428,735</b>

# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued) JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 5. Long-Term Liabilities (continued)

As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the Authority maintained its required debt service accounts as follows:

	<u>June 30, 2017</u>		<u>June 30, 2016</u>	
	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>
Required for FTS	\$ 166,435	\$ 327,123	\$ 120,355	\$ 291,072
Required for BARBs	191,120	391,066	169,095	392,792
Total	<u>\$ 357,555</u>	<u>\$ 718,189</u>	<u>\$ 289,450</u>	<u>\$ 683,864</u>

The Authority held \$1.9 billion and \$1.7 billion in excess of amounts required to be retained for FTS Bonds debt service under the Indenture as of June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The Authority held \$260.9 million and \$282.8 million in excess of amounts required to be retained for BARBs debt service under the Indenture as of June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

### 6. Unrestricted Grants

In fiscal year 2017, the Authority received an unrestricted grant from the City in the amount of \$1.9 billion. These funds will be used to fund future year's debt service requirements for FTS Bonds and will reduce the amount of PIT retained for such purpose. Additionally, the Authority received a grant from HYIC in the amount of \$112.8 million. These funds were also used toward the Authority's future debt service payments. In fiscal year 2016, the Authority received an unrestricted grant from the City in the amount of \$1.7 billion for FTS Bonds. These funds were used to fund future years' debt service requirements for FTS Bonds. The City grants are reported as assigned for debt service in the governmental funds balance sheets.

### 7. Administrative Costs

The Authority's management fee, overhead and expenditures related to carrying out the Authority's duties, including remarketing and liquidity fees not funded from bond proceeds or investment earnings, are funded from the personal income taxes, building aid revenue and grant revenue.



# NEW YORK CITY TRANSITIONAL FINANCE AUTHORITY

(A Component Unit of The City of New York)

## NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (continued)

JUNE 30, 2017 AND 2016

---

### 8. Subsequent Events

On July 20, 2017, the Authority issued \$812.8 million of tax-exempt Fiscal 2018 Series S-1 BARBs and \$194.8 million of tax-exempt Fiscal 2018 S-2 BARBs. The tax-exempt proceeds were used to refund prior outstanding BARBs.

On August 17, 2017, the Authority issued \$1.35 billion, Fiscal 2018 Series A FTS Bonds, comprised of Subseries A-1, \$181.3 million of tax-exempt bonds; Subseries A-2, \$406.8 million of tax-exempt bonds; Subseries A-3, \$411.9 million of tax-exempt bonds; Subseries A-4 \$124.2 million of taxable bonds; Subseries A-5, \$225.8 million of taxable bonds. The proceeds of the Fiscal 2018 Series A FTS Bonds will be used for the City's capital programs. The Authority also reoffered \$161.1 million of Series 2018-1 FTS bonds.

\* \* \* \* \*

(This page intentionally left blank)

## PROPOSED FORM OF BOND COUNSEL OPINION

March 22, 2018

## New York City Transitional Finance Authority

We have acted as bond counsel to the New York City Transitional Finance Authority (the “Authority”), a public benefit corporation organized under the laws of the State of New York (the “State”), in the Authority’s issuance of its Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Series S-3 Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “Series S-3 Bonds”), its Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Subseries S-4A Tax-Exempt Bonds (the “Subseries S-4A Bonds” and, together with the Series S-3 Bonds, the “Tax-Exempt Bonds”) and its Building Aid Revenue Bonds, Fiscal 2018 Subseries S-4B Taxable Bonds (such Subseries S-4B Taxable Bonds, together with the Tax-Exempt Bonds, the “Series 2018 S Bonds”). The Series 2018 S Bonds are being issued pursuant to Chapter 16, Laws of New York, 1997, as amended (the “Act”), to the Amended and Restated Original Indenture, as restated December 1, 2010, as supplemented (the “Indenture”), between the Authority and The Bank of New York Mellon, as Trustee, to an Assignment of State Aid dated October 19, 2006 (the “Assignment”), and to a Financing Agreement dated October 1, 1997, as amended (the “Agreement”), between the Authority and The City of New York (the “City”). Terms not defined herein are used as defined in the Indenture. We assume the parties will perform their respective covenants in the Indenture and the Agreement in all material respects.

The Series 2018 S Bonds are dated, bear interest, mature, are subject to redemption and are secured as set forth in the Indenture. The Authority is authorized to issue additional bonds payable from the Building Aid pledged and the other collateral provided for School Bonds in the Indenture (together with such bonds heretofore issued and the Series 2018 S Bonds, the “School Bonds”) and other bonds (together with the School Bonds, the “Bonds”) on the terms and conditions set forth in the Indenture and all such Bonds shall be entitled to the benefit, protection and security of the Indenture, payable from the sources of revenue in the order of priority set forth therein.

Based on the foregoing and our examination of existing law, such legal proceedings and such other documents as we deem necessary to render this opinion, we are of the opinion that:

1. The Authority is a public benefit corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State, and is authorized under the laws of the State, particularly the Act, to enter into the Indenture and the Agreement and to issue the Series 2018 S Bonds. Under the laws of the State, including the Constitution of the State, and under the Constitution of the United States, the Act is valid with respect to all provisions thereof material to the subject matter of this opinion letter.
2. The Series 2018 S Bonds have been duly authorized, executed, and delivered by the Authority and are valid and binding obligations of the Authority payable from the Building Aid pledged and the other collateral provided for School Bonds in the Indenture. The Series 2018 S Bonds do not constitute a debt of the State or the City, and neither the State nor the City shall be liable thereon, nor shall the Series 2018 S Bonds be payable out of any funds other than those of the Authority.
3. The Act validly provides for (a) the payment to the Authority of the Building Aid, (b) the Authority’s pledge to the Trustee of the Building Aid and other collateral described in the Indenture and (c) the application of proceeds of the Series 2018 S Bonds to purposes of the City.
4. The City, acting through the Mayor, has assigned to the Authority all of the State school building aid payable to the City or its school district pursuant to subdivision 6 of section 3602 of the Education Law (or to any successor provision of State law) and, under the Act, such Building Aid and the right to receive the Building Aid are the property of the Authority. The availability of Building Aid for payment by the Authority of principal or interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds is subject to State appropriation, to prior claims under the Constitution and laws of the State, and to priorities under the Indenture in favor of specified Senior Bonds, Recovery Bonds and other Parity Debt.

5. The Indenture (a) has been duly and lawfully authorized, executed and delivered by the Authority, (b) creates the valid pledge of Building Aid and other collateral that it purports to create and (c) is a valid and binding agreement, enforceable in accordance with its terms, of the Authority, and to the extent specified in the Act, the State. The Act does not restrict the right of the State to amend, modify, repeal or otherwise alter statutes imposing or relating to the Building Aid nor does it obligate the State to make any payments not specified in the Act or impose any taxes to satisfy the obligations of the Authority.

6. The lien of the Indenture on the Building Aid for the security of the outstanding Senior Bonds, Recovery Bonds, other Parity Debt and School Bonds, including the Series 2018 S Bonds, and other instruments, to the extent specified in the Indenture is, and pursuant to the covenant of the Authority in the Indenture will be, prior to all other liens thereon. The pledge of Revenues, including the Building Aid, and other collateral made by the Authority in the Indenture is valid, binding and perfected without any physical delivery of the collateral or further act, and the lien thereof is valid, binding and perfected against all parties having claims of any kind in tort, contract or otherwise against the Authority irrespective of such parties' notice thereof.

7. The Assignment and the Agreement have been duly and lawfully authorized, executed and delivered by the Authority and the City pursuant to the Act, and are valid and binding agreements of each of them.

8. The Authority is not eligible for protection from its creditors pursuant to Title 11 (the "Bankruptcy Code") of the United States Code. If the debts of the City were adjusted under the Bankruptcy Code, and the City or its creditors asserted a right to the Building Aid superior or equal to the rights of the holders of the Bonds, such assertion would not succeed.

9. The Series 2018 S Bonds are issued for school purposes and therefore entitled to the benefit of § 99-b of the State Finance Law.

10. Interest on the Series 2018 S Bonds is exempt from personal income taxes imposed by the State or any political subdivision thereof, including the City.

11. The Authority and the City have covenanted, in Tax Certificates dated the date hereof, to comply with certain provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the "Tax Code"), relating to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds for purposes of federal income taxation. Assuming compliance by the Authority and the City with such covenants, interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for purposes of federal income taxation. Failure by the Authority or the City to comply with such covenants may cause interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof retroactive to the date of issue of the Tax-Exempt Bonds. Further, we render no opinion as to the effect on the exclusion from gross income of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds of any action (including without limitation a change in the interest rate mode with respect to the Tax-Exempt Bonds) taken or not taken after the date of this opinion without our approval.

12. Interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds is not an item of tax preference for purposes of the federal individual or corporate alternative minimum tax. The Tax Code contains other provisions that could result in tax consequences, upon which we render no opinion, as a result of ownership of such Tax-Exempt Bonds or the inclusion in certain computations (including without limitation those related to the corporate alternative minimum tax) of interest that is excluded from gross income. We call to your attention that, for taxable years that began on or before December 31, 2017, interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds owned by certain corporations will be included in such corporations' adjusted current earnings for purposes of computing the alternative minimum tax on such corporations. The alternative minimum tax on corporations has been repealed for taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 2018.

We express no opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Series 2018 S Bonds. Furthermore, we express no opinion as to the effect on the exclusion from gross income of interest on the Tax-Exempt Bonds of any action (including without limitation a change in the interest rate made with respect to any of the Tax-Exempt Bonds) taken or not taken after the date of this opinion without our approval. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Tax-Exempt Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, "S" corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement Benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations

13. No registration with, consent of, or approval by any governmental agency or commission that has not been obtained is necessary for the execution and delivery of the Series 2018 S Bonds. The adoption and compliance with all of the terms and conditions of the Indenture and the Series 2018 S Bonds, and the execution and delivery of the Series 2018 S Bonds, will not result in a violation of or be in conflict with any existing law.

The rights of the holders of the Series 2018 S Bonds and the enforceability thereof may be subject to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other similar laws affecting creditors' rights heretofore or hereafter enacted, to the extent constitutionally applicable and except as specifically stated above, and may also be subject to the exercise of the State's police powers and of judicial discretion in appropriate cases.

Our opinions are based on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may hereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may hereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above. Finally, we express no opinion herein as to the accuracy, completeness or sufficiency of, or any other matter related to, the Official Statement dated March 16, 2018, relating to the Series 2018 S Bonds or any other offering material relating to the Series 2018 S Bonds.

(This page intentionally left blank)

**APPENDIX D**

**BONDS TO BE REDEEMED**

The Authority expects to redeem the Refunded Bonds, at or prior to maturity, by applying the proceeds of the Refunding Bonds, with other funds of the Authority, to provide for, at or prior to maturity, the payment of the principal of and interest and redemption premium, if any, on such Refunded Bonds to the extent and to the payment dates set forth below. The refunding is contingent upon the delivery of the Refunding Bonds.

Refunded Bonds that are to be paid at maturity which are redeemable by their terms, if any, may be called for redemption at the option of the Authority if the escrow account is hereafter restructured to provide for their redemption. Any such restructuring must preserve (a) the sufficiency of the escrow account to pay the principal, interest to maturity or redemption, and any redemption premium on all the Refunded Bonds and (b) the exclusion from gross income for federal income tax purposes of interest on the Refunding Bonds and the Refunded Bonds, as applicable.

The Refunded Bonds are being provided for in whole or in part as indicated in the footnotes hereto.

The proceeds of the Subseries S-4A Bonds will be applied to redeem the following Refunded Bonds:

Series	Dated Date	Maturity	Rate	Payment Date	Amount
Fiscal 2008 Series S-1	June 18, 2008	January 15, 2019	4.125%	April 23, 2018	\$17,720,000 (a)
		January 15, 2020	4.300	April 23, 2018	7,970,000 (a)
		January 15, 2020	5.000	April 23, 2018	10,480,000 (a)
		January 15, 2021	4.375	April 23, 2018	6,715,000 (a)
		January 15, 2021	5.000	April 23, 2018	12,600,000 (a)
		January 15, 2022	4.400	April 23, 2018	1,445,000 (a)
		January 15, 2022	5.000	April 23, 2018	18,795,000 (a)
		January 15, 2023	4.500	April 23, 2018	3,120,000 (a)
		January 15, 2023	5.000	April 23, 2018	18,125,000 (a)
		January 15, 2024	4.500	April 23, 2018	855,000 (a)
		January 15, 2024	5.000	April 23, 2018	21,435,000 (a)
		January 15, 2025	4.500	April 23, 2018	2,980,000 (a)
		January 15, 2025	5.000	April 23, 2018	20,420,000 (a)
		January 15, 2026	4.600	April 23, 2018	1,600,000 (a)
		January 15, 2026	5.000	April 23, 2018	22,955,000 (a)
		January 15, 2027	4.600	April 23, 2018	2,145,000 (a)
		January 15, 2027	5.000	April 23, 2018	23,630,000 (a)
		January 15, 2028	4.625	April 23, 2018	4,835,000 (a)
		January 15, 2028	5.000	April 23, 2018	22,225,000 (a)
		January 15, 2029	4.700	April 23, 2018	3,195,000 (a)
		January 15, 2029	5.000	April 23, 2018	25,195,000 (a)
		January 15, 2034	5.000	April 23, 2018	164,675,000 (a)(t)
		January 15, 2038	4.500	April 23, 2018	116,990,000 (a)(t)
January 15, 2038	4.750	April 23, 2018	45,900,000 (a)(t)		

(a) The amount shown is being defeased and is all of the bonds of this description, except those, if any, that have been previously defeased.

(t) The defeased bonds will be credited against the redemption for the Term Bond of this description:

**Fiscal 2008 Series S-1, Term Bond Due January 15, 2034**

<u>January 15</u>	<u>Amount</u>
2030	\$29,800,000
2031	31,295,000
2032	32,855,000
2033	34,500,000
2034	36,225,000

**Fiscal 2008 Series S-1, Term Bond Due January 15, 2038 (4.50%)**

<u>January 15</u>	<u>Amount</u>
2035	\$30,070,000
2036	29,825,000
2037	20,765,000
2038	36,330,000

**Fiscal 2008 Series S-1, Term Bond Due January 15, 2038 (4.75%)**

<u>January 15</u>	<u>Amount</u>
2035	\$7,965,000
2036	9,945,000
2037	20,815,000
2038	7,175,000

The proceeds of the Subseries S-4B Bonds will be applied to redeem the following Refunded Bonds:

<u>Series</u>	<u>Dated Date</u>	<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Rate</u>	<u>Payment Date</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Fiscal 2011 Subseries S-1A	November 23, 2010	July 15, 2020	5.000%	July 15, 2020	\$6,320,000 (a)
Fiscal 2012 Subseries S-1A	December 15, 2011	July 15, 2019	4.000	July 15, 2019	5,550,000 (p)
		July 15, 2020	3.000	July 15, 2020	5,015,000 (a)
		July 15, 2020	5.000	July 15, 2020	1,120,000 (p)
		July 15, 2021	4.000	July 15, 2021	5,480,000 (a)
		July 15, 2021	5.000	July 15, 2021	8,175,000 (p)
Fiscal 2013 Series S-1	July 19, 2012	July 15, 2018	5.000	July 15, 2018	12,755,000 (p)
		July 15, 2019	4.000	July 15, 2019	12,830,000 (a)
		July 15, 2020	4.000	July 15, 2020	6,665,000 (a)
		July 15, 2021	3.000	July 15, 2021	6,245,000 (a)
		July 15, 2021	5.000	July 15, 2021	8,175,000 (p)

(p) The amount shown is being defeased and is a portion of the bond of this description.

(a) The amount shown is being defeased and is all of the bonds of this description, except those, if any, that have been previously defeased.